CITROËN

C4
C4 X
Owner's Manual

nothing
moves us
like citroën

WELCOME

Thank you for choosing Citroën C4/ë-C4 or Citroën C4 X/ë-C4 X. This document contains the key information and recommendations you will need to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.
We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with it, as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.
The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.
Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.
If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Owner's Manual** is passed on to the new owner.

OBTAIN THE OWNER'S MANUAL

ONLINE

View or download the Owner's Manual at the following address:
http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/
Scan this QR Code for direct access.
Select:
– the language,
– the vehicle and body style,
– the issue period of the handbook corresponding to the date of 1st registration of the vehicle.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

PRINTED VERSION

Order the Owner's Manual in paper format from a CITROËN dealer.

Introduction 1

Key 3
How To Use This Manual 3
Propulsion Type 3
Eco-driving 3
Accessories Purchased By The Owner 4
Symbol Glossary 5

Getting to know your vehicle 2

Keys 6
Radio remote control function 6
Electronic Key System 8
Central locking system 9
Battery Replacement 9
Emergency Key 11
Remote Start 12
Vehicle Security System 14
Doors 16
Tailgate Operation 16
Power Windows 17
Heated windshield 18
Windscreen 18
Sunroof 19
Mirrors 21
Front Head Restraints 23
Rear Head Restraints 23
Seats 24
Rear Seats 25
Seat Belts 26
Safety Belts warning lamps display 26
Three Points Seat Belt 28
Airbag System 28
Child Restraints Introduction 31
Steering Wheel 39
Steering Wheel Controls 39
Steering Wheel Shift Paddles 39
Steering Wheel Heating 39
Horn 39
Pedestrian horn (Hybrid, Rechargeable hybrid or Electric) 40
Windshield Wiper And Washer 40
Rain Sensing Wiper Control 42
Driver Memory Settings 43
Exterior Lights 43
Interior Lights 48
Sunroof 49
Interior Storage - Interior Features 51

Dashboard instruments 3

Instrument Panel 54
Digital instrument panel 55
Instrument Cluster 56
Manual test 58
Climate Controls 67
Touch Screen and Info Display 74
Head-up display 76

Infotainment system 4

My shortcuts 78
Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen 79
3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen 92

Starting & operating 5

Starting Procedure 107
Brakes 112
Transmission 115
Driving Modes 119
Fuel 120
Charging 121
Vehicle Loading 133
Towing Device 134
Driving Tips 136

ADAS - Advances driving assistance systems 6

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations 138
Collision Avoidance Assistance System 140
Vehicle Stability Assistance System 143
Braking Performance Assistance System 145
Visibility Enhancement Assistance System 145
Lane Centering Assistance System 147
Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System 153
Driver's Attention Assistance System 158
Speed Control Assistance System 160
Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System 168
Utility Features Assistance System 169

In case of emergency 7

Hazard Warning Flashers 177
Assist and SOS 177
Warning Triangle 179
Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing 180
Tire Repair Kit 184
Jump Starting 186
Towing the Car - Towing a Disabled Vehicle 192
Towing constraints 193
Accessing the tools 194

Maintenance And Vehicle Care 8

General Information 196
End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal 197
Scheduled Servicing 197
Engine Compartment 201
Fuses 201
Light Replacement 201
Tires and wheels 204

Technical specifications 9

Vehicle Identification 206
Vehicle Data 207
Wheels and tires 212

Customer information 10

Introduction 213
Technical data of the vehicle 213
Comfort and infotainment functions 214
Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple® CarPlay®) 215
Online services - "Over The Air" connectivity 215

CONTENTS

Key


Safety warning


Additional information


Environmental protection feature


Left-hand drive vehicle


Right-hand drive vehicle


Location of the equipment / button described using a black area.

How To Use This Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts lefthand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.

Propulsion Type

Internal combustion engine vehicle (ICE)

An ICE vehicle is propelled by an internal petrol combustion engine only.

Hybrid 48 V vehicle (MHEV)

A Hybrid 48 V vehicle is propelled by a combination of an ICE and an electric engine. The electric engine supports the ICE but can also propell the vehicle by itself.
The 48 V battery is mainly charged by engine braking.

Battery electric vehicle (BEV)

A BEV is propelled by an electric engine only. The high voltage battery is charged using a charging cable and additionally by engine braking.

Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise the vehicle's energy consumption (fuel and/or electricity) and CO2 emissions.

Optimise your use of the gearbox
With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode. Do not depress the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.
The gear shift indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear. Whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly
Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices help to save on energy consumption, reduce CO2 emissions and decrease general traffic noise.
With a hybrid engine, engine braking is more efficient. Anticipate slowing down as much as you can and, if possible, favour deceleration with engine braking in order to charge the traction battery, to increase all-electric driving and to reduce fuel consumption.
When the traffic is flowing smoothly, select the cruise control.

Control the use of electrical equipment
Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by

opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (e.g. sunroof blind, window blinds).
Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.
Adapt your use of the headlamps and/or foglights to the level of visibility, in accordance with current legislation in the country in which you are driving.
Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter (other than in severe wintry conditions: temperature below -23°C). The vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.
As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (e.g. film, music, video game) to help reduce the consumption of energy.
Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption
Spread loads throughout the vehicle. Place the heaviest items in the boot as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimise wind resistance (e.g. roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer).
Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.
At the end of winter, remove snow tires and refit summer tires.

Comply with the servicing instructions
Check tire pressures regularly, with the tires cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
- before a long journey.
- at each change of season.
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tires on your trailer or caravan.
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (e.g. engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.). Observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.
When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third cut-out of the nozzle, to avoid overflow.
You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

Optimising the driving range of electrified vehicles
The vehicle's consumption of electrical energy greatly depends on the route profile, speed and driving style, as well as the use of the heating/air conditioning.
Favour the **ECO** and **CHARGE** zones of the power indicator by driving smoothly and at a steady speed.

Electric vehicles
Program a destination into the vehicle's GPS navigation system to optimise consumption during a journey.
Anticipate the need to slow down, and brake smoothly, whenever possible using engine braking with the regenerative braking function, which will move the power indicator into the "**CHARGE**" zone.
Use the air conditioning rather than the heating to demist the passenger compartment.

Accessories Purchased By The Owner

If after buying the car, you decide to install electrical accessories that require a permanent electrical supply (e.g. radio, satellite anti-theft system, etc.) or accessories that in any case burden the electrical supply, contact a STELLANTIS dealer, whose personnel will check whether the electrical system of the car is able to withstand the load required, or whether it needs to be integrated with a more powerful conventional battery.

Take care when fitting additional spoilers, alloy wheel rims or non-standard wheel hubs: they could reduce the ventilation of the brakes and affect efficiency under sharp, repeated braking or on long descents.

Make sure that nothing obstructs the pedal stroke (mats, etc.).

Installing Electrical Electronic Devices
Electrical and electronic devices installed after buying the car in the context of aftersales service must carry the following label: The Manufacturer authorises the installation of transceivers provided that installation is carried out at a specialised centre, in a workmanlike fashion and in compliance with manufacturer's specifications.

Traffic police may not allow the car on the road if devices have been installed which modify the features of the car.

This may also cause invalidation of warranty in relation to faults caused by the change either directly or indirectly related to it.
The Manufacturer all not be liable for damage caused by the installation of accessories either not supplied or recommended by the Manufacturer and/or not installed in compliance with the provided instructions.
Radio Transmitters And Mobile Phone Radio transmitter equipment (car mobile phones, CB radios, amateur radio etc.) cannot be used inside the car unless a separate aerial is mounted on the roof.

Symbol Glossary

“Ease of use and comfort - Rear bench seat - Rear head restraints” section:



"Ease of use and comfort - Front fittings - Wireless smartphone charger" section:



"Lighting and visibility - Exterior lighting control stalk" and "In the event of a breakdown - Changing a bulb" sections:



"Safety - Child seats - Deactivating the front passenger airbag" section:





"Safety - ISOFIX mountings" section:



"Driving - Electric parking brake" section:



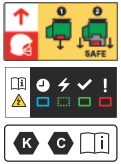
"Driving - Stop & Start" section:



"Practical information - Compatibility of fuels" section:



"Practical information - Charging system (Electric)" section:



"Practical information - Charging the traction battery (Electric)" section:



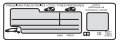
"Practical information - hood" section:



"Practical information - Checking levels - Engine coolant" section:



"In the event of a breakdown - Temporary puncture repair kit" section:





"In the event of a breakdown - Spare wheel" section:



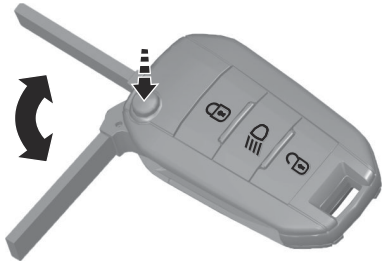
"In the event of a breakdown - 12 V battery/ Accessory battery" section:



Keys

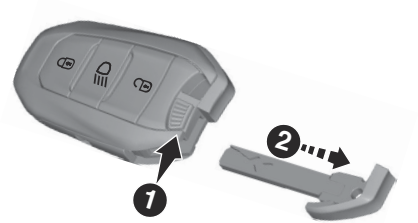
The key built into the remote control can be used for the following operations, depending on version:
– Locking/Unlocking the vehicle.
– Activation/Deactivation of the manual child lock .
– Activation/Deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
– Back-up Unlocking/Locking of the doors.
– Switching on the ignition and starting/ switching off the engine.

Without Keyless Entry and Start



► To unfold or fold the key, press the button.

With Keyless Entry and Start



► To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

Once the built-in key is ejected, always keep it with you to be able to carry out the corresponding back-up procedures.

Radio remote control function



The remote control can be used to perform the following remote functions (depending on version):
– Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
– Remote operation of lighting.
– Folding/Unfolding the door mirrors.
– Activating/Deactivating the alarm.
– Locating the vehicle.
– Opening/Closing the windows.
– Closing the sunroof.
– Activating the vehicle's electronic immobiliser.
Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc. For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control. It would weigh down on its shaft in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Never switch off the ignition before having completely immobilised the vehicle.
With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!



Locking the vehicle



Unlocking the vehicle



Remote lighting of the lights

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen



Unlocking the vehicle



Selective unlocking is configured in the **Driving** touch screen menu.

3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen



Selective unlocking is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Complete unlocking

▶ If the selective unlocking is deactivated, press the unlocking button.

Selective unlocking
Driver's door

▶ Press the unlocking button.

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked (Petrol or Hybrid).
The driver's door and the charging flap are unlocked (Electric).

▶ Press it **again** to unlock the other doors and the boot.

The charging nozzle can be unplugged on the second press.
Complete or selective unlocking and alarm deactivation is confirmed by the flashing of the sidelights and/or daytime running lights.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Unlocking and partial opening of the boot



▶ Press this button for more than one second to unlock the boot. The boot opens slightly.

This action unlocks the vehicle first.

Locking the vehicle



Normal locking

▶ Ignition off, press the locking button.

The locking, and the activation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators.
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

An access (door or boot) that is not properly closed prevents locking of the vehicle. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.
If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be reactivated automatically.

Deadlocking

Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the central locking button.
The horn remains operational.
Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

▶ Ignition off, press the locking button.

▶ Press the locking button again within 3 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

For the vehicles equipped with the Proximity Keyless Entry and Start system, a double audio signal indicates that the vehicle is not deadlocked.



With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen, depending on version, the activation/deactivation of the lock audible signal is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Opening / Closing the windows
Opening the windows



▶ Press the unlocking button for more than 3 seconds.

Depending on version, the windows stop when the button is released or by pressing the button a second time.

Closing the windows and sunroof (depending on version)



▶ Press the locking button for more than 3 seconds.

Depending on version, the windows and the sunroof stop when the button is released or by pressing the button a second time.

Ensure that no person or object could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof.
If, on versions with alarm, you want to leave the windows and/or sunroof partially open, you must first deactivate the interior volumetric alarm protection.
For more information on the **Alarm**, refer to the corresponding section.

Remote lighting of the lights
(Depending on version)



▶ Press this button. The sidelights, dipped beam headlights, number plate lights and door mirror spotlights come on for 30 seconds.

Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lights immediately.
Advice

Remote control
The remote control is a sensitive, highfrequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.
Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.
The remote control does not work when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.

Anti-theft protection
Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.
For vehicles with a key ignition switch, remember to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

Locking the vehicle
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the passenger compartment in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

Electronic Key System

The electronic key can affect a pacemaker.
Keep the electronic key away from the breast.



Enables a keyless operation of the following functions:

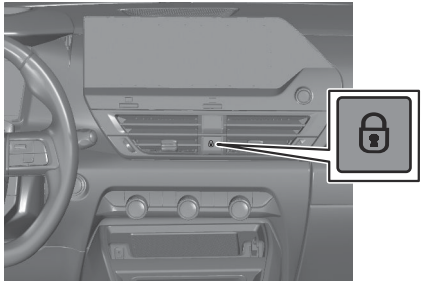
- ▶ central locking system
- ▶ ignition switching on and starting the engine

The electronic key simply needs to be on the driver's person.
For reasons of security, the electronic key may be equipped with a motion sensor. If so, starting of the vehicle is not possible when

the electronic key has not been moved for a certain time. When trying to start the vehicle, a corresponding message appears in the Driver Information Center. Move the electronic key and try to start the vehicle again.
Additionally, the electronic key includes the functionality of the radio remote control.
Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is subjected to strong shocks. In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.

Central locking system



Manual

► Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the passenger compartment.

Central locking does not take place if any of the doors are open.

When locking/deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is deactivated.
► After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
► After deadlocking, you must use the remote control, the "Keyless Entry and Start" system or the built-in key to unlock the vehicle.

Battery Replacement

If the battery is flat, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.

Without Keyless Entry and Start



With Keyless Entry and Start



► Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and lift the cover.
► Remove the flat battery from its housing.
► Put the new battery in place, respecting the polarity. Start by inserting it into the contacts located in the corner, then clip the cover onto the unit.
► Reinitialise the remote control.

For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

This equipment contains a button type battery.
Do not swallow the battery. Risk of chemical burns! Swallowing the battery can cause serious internal burning in only 2 hours and can be fatal.
If batteries have been swallowed or inserted into a part of the body, seek immediate medical advice.
Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children.
If the battery compartment does not close properly, stop using the product and keep it out of the reach of children.

Risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect type!
Replace the battery with the same type.

Risk of explosion or leaking of inflammable liquid or gas!
Do not use in/store in/place in an environment where the temperature is extremely high or where the pressure is extremely low due to very high altitude.
Do not try to burn, crush or cut a used battery.

Reinitialising the remote control
Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

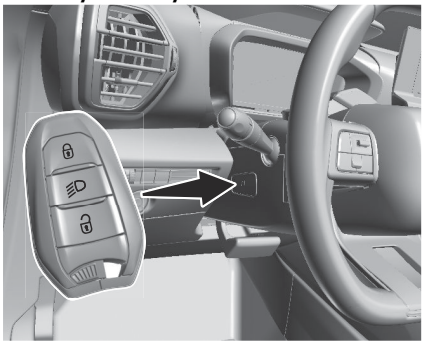
Without Keyless Entry and Start



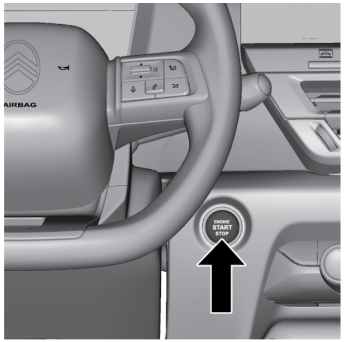
- Switch the ignition off.
- Turn the key to position 2 (Ignition on).
- Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

With Keyless Entry and Start



- Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.
- Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- **With an automatic gearbox or drive selector**, while in mode **P**, depress the brake pedal.



► Switch on the ignition by pressing the **"START/STOP"** button.

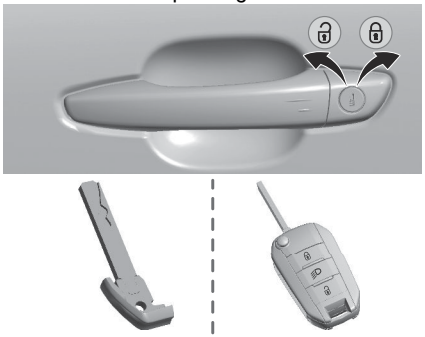
If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Emergency Key

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key
Go to a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key
Use this procedure in the following situations:
– Remote control battery discharged.
– Remote control malfunction.
– Vehicle battery discharged.
– Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, change the remote control battery.
In the second case, reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.



► Insert the key in the door lock.

► Turn the key towards the front or the rear to unlock or lock the vehicle.

If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Central locking not functioning
Use these procedures in the following cases:
– Central locking malfunction.
– Battery disconnected or discharged.

In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Front left-hand door

► Insert the key into the lock and turn it towards the front or rear of the vehicle to lock and unlock the door.

Rear Doors Child Locks

The system prevents a rear door from being opened using its interior handle.
The control is located on the edge of each rear door (indicated by a marking on the bodywork).

Locking/Unlocking
► Open the doors.
► To lock, turn the built-in key fully:

► To the right on the left-hand rear door.

► To the left on the right-hand rear door.

► To unlock, turn it in the opposite direction.

Unlocking

► Pull the interior door opening control.

Locking



► Open the doors.

- For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

Refer to the corresponding section.

- Gently insert the key into the latch located in the door lock, then turn the latch an eighth of a turn towards the outside of the door.
- Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Reinitializing the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

Without Keyless Entry and Start



- Switch the ignition off.
- Turn the key to position 2 (Ignition on).
- Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

With Keyless Entry and Start



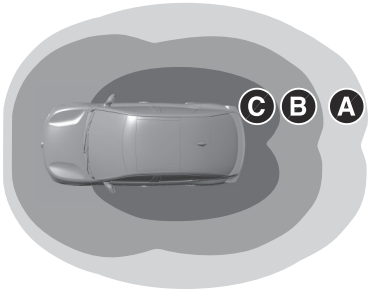
- Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.
- Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- **With an automatic gearbox or drive selector**, while in mode **P**, depress the brake pedal.
- Switch on the ignition by pressing the **START/STOP** button.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Remote Start

This is a Keyless Entry and Start system.
It enables automatic vehicle locking/unlocking simply by detecting the electronic key.

As long as the driver has the electronic key on their person, the vehicle unlocks as they approach and locks when they walk away.
Key recognition zones:



Zone A: welcome lighting on approaching the vehicle (between 3 and 5 metres from the vehicle).
Zone B: automatic locking on moving away from the vehicle (about 2 metres from the vehicle).
Zone C: automatic unlocking on approaching the vehicle (between 1 and 2 metres from the vehicle).

Activation/Deactivation

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

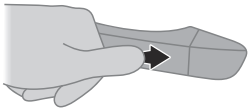


The automatic functions are configured via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

The automatic functions are configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Unlocking the vehicle





With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

Selective unlocking is configured in the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

Selective unlocking is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Complete unlocking

The vehicle (doors and boot) unlocks automatically as the driver approaches in zone **C**, if the automatic functions are activated.

You can also unlock the vehicle by gently pressing the button on the boot.

Unlocking, and alarm deactivation (depending on version), is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

If the key remains around the vehicle (zones **A**, **B** or **C**) for more than 15 minutes without action, the automatic functions are deactivated. To unlock or lock the vehicle, use the remote control or press on one of the door handles.

If using the door handle does not lock/ unlock the vehicle, bring the key closer and repeat the desired action.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door

It operates automatically when approaching the driver's door, if the automatic functions are activated.

Depending on version, it can also operate by gently pressing the driver's door handle.

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked (Petrol or Hybrid).

The driver's door and the charging flap are unlocked (Electric).

► Once inside the vehicle, to unlock all accesses, press the central locking button or pull the opening control on any door.

Selective unlocking of the tailgate

The tailgate unlocks automatically as you approach the rear of the vehicle.

► Press the tailgate control to open the boot.

The doors remain locked.

After a selective unlocking of the tailgate, if the vehicle has not been fully unlocked, the tailgate will automatically relock after closing.

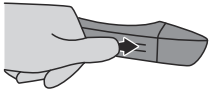
Locking the vehicle

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

Depending on version, the activation/ deactivation of the lock audible signal is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Normal locking

With the doors and boot closed, the vehicle locks automatically upon leaving zone **B**, if the automatic functions are activated.





Depending on version, you can also lock the vehicle by gently pressing the driver's door handle.

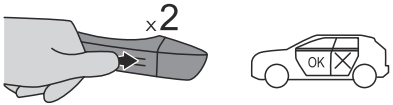
Locking is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators, and by a double audible signal when the vehicle is locked upon walking away.

The alarm does not activate when locking automatically from a distance (the direction indicators do not light up).

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

Deadlocking

Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button.
The horn remains operational.
Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



- Gently press the driver's door handle to lock the vehicle.
- Press it again within 3 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

A double audible signal indicates that the vehicle is not deadlocked.

Advice

If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Start system has been left inside the vehicle, central locking will not take place.

If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or tailgate are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If fitted to the vehicle, the alarm is automatically reactivated (if previously activated).

Automatic folding/unfolding of the door mirrors is configured in the touch screen.
For more information on **Mirrors**, refer to the corresponding section.

As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key with you.
Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery:
– The unlocking on approach function (zone **C**) automatically switches to hibernation mode after several days (approximately one week) without being used. To unlock the vehicle, use the remote control or press on one of the door handles. The next time the vehicle is started, the automatic unlocking and locking functions will be reactivated.
– If the welcome lighting is triggered several times in succession without the vehicle subsequently being started, it will be deactivated.
– All "hands-free" functions switch to hibernation mode after 21 days without being used. To restore these functions, unlock the vehicle using the remote control and start the engine.

Electrical interference
The electronic key may not work if it is close to an electronic device (e.g. mobile telephone (switched on or on standby), laptop computer, strong magnetic fields). If this occurs, move the electronic key away from the electronic device.

Vehicle Security System

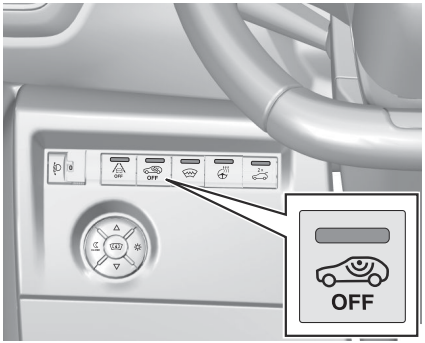
Anti-theft locking system

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)
The doors and boot lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).
To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):

- Press the button until a confirmation message appears.

Transporting long or voluminous objects
Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the sound of the locks rebounding will be heard and an alert will be displayed.

Anti-theft alarm system



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Exterior perimeter monitoring
The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the hood, for example.

Interior volumetric monitoring
The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Self-protection function
The system checks whether any of its components are out of service.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

Work on the alarm system
Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system Activation

- Switch off the ignition and exit the vehicle.
- Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control or by pressing on the driver's door handle.

When the monitoring system is active, the red indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.
The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

The alarm does not activate when locking automatically from a distance.

If an opening (door, boot or bonnet) is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation

- Press one of the remote control unlocking buttons:


Short press.

or


Long press.

- Unlock the vehicle by pressing the driver's door handle.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

After unlocking using the remote control
If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically activated.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only
Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in certain cases such as:
– Slightly open window.
– Washing the vehicle.
– Changing a wheel.
– Towing the vehicle.
– Transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating interior volumetric monitoring

- Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until the indicator lamp is on fixed.
- Exit the vehicle.
- Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or by pressing on the driver's door handle.

Only exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second.

To take effect, this deactivation must be performed whenever the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating interior volumetric monitoring

► Deactivate exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

► Reactivate the full alarm system by locking the vehicle using the remote control or by pressing the driver's door handle.

The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm
This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.
Depending on the country of sale, certain monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system, rapid flashing of the red indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops.

Failure of the remote control
To deactivate the monitoring functions:

► Unlock the vehicle using the key in the front left-hand door lock.

► Open the door; the alarm is triggered.

► Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

► Lock the vehicle using the key (built-in the remote control) in the front left-hand door lock.

Automatic activation
(Depending on version) The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

► To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

Malfunction
When the ignition is switched on, the fixed lighting of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a system malfunction.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Doors

Opening
From outside

► After unlocking the vehicle or with the "Keyless Entry and Start" system electronic key in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

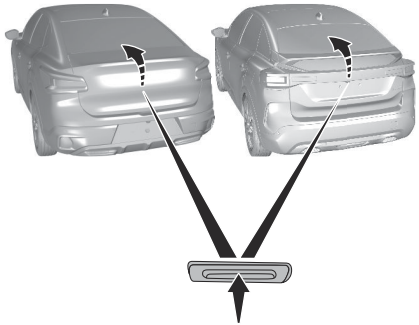
From inside

► Pull the interior opening control of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

With selective unlocking activated:
– Opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked).
– Opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

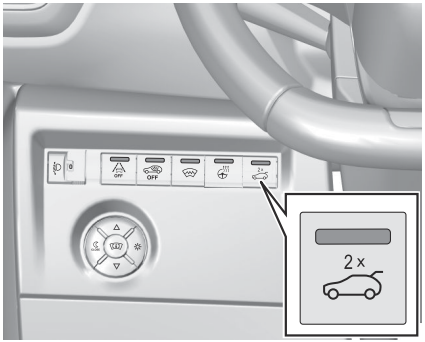
Tailgate Operation

Opening



► After unlocking the vehicle, press the opening control and then lift the tailgate.

Opening from the inside



► Press the boot opening button located on the dashboard.
The tailgtate is released and opens slightly.

Closing

► Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

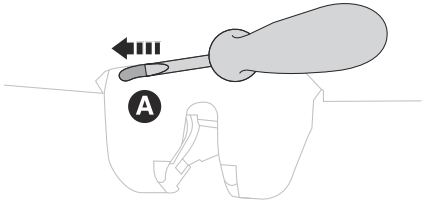
In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

Emergency operation

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

► Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



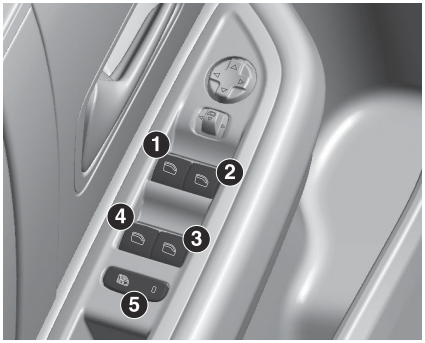
► Insert a small screwdriver into hole A of the lock to unlock the boot.
► Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

Power Windows



1. Left-hand front
2. Right-hand front
3. Right-hand rear
4. Left-hand rear
5. Deactivation of electric window controls located by rear seats

Manual Windows

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch without passing the point of resistance; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch past its resistance point: the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released.

Operating the switch again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition. After that time, the controls are disabled. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Anti-pinch
If the window meets an obstacle while rising, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear electric windows
For your children's safety, press control 5 to deactivate the controls for the rear electric windows, irrespective of their positions.
The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.
The rear electric windows can still be controlled using the driver's controls.

In the event of a serious impact, use of the rear electric window controls is re-enabled, if they had been deactivated.

Reinitialising the electric windows
After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.

The anti-pinch function is disabled during the following sequence of operations.
For each window:

- Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
- Continue to pull the control for at least one second after the window reaches the closed position.

In some circumstances, the safety function may be actived without visible obstacle.
The automatic closing of the window is stopped and it will open again.
Proceed as follows:

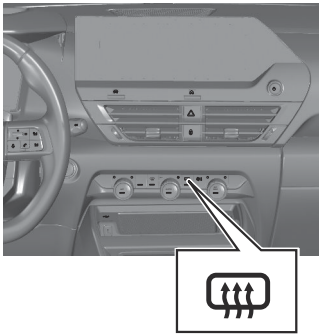
- Within 5 seconds after it opens again, push the control down until the window is fully opened.
- Within 2 seconds, pull and hold the control upwards until the window is fully closed.

During this operation, the safety function is deactivated.

If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed.
To do this, press the relevant control.
When the driver operates the passengers' electric window controls, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.
It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the windows.
Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows using the key or the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.
Do not put your head or arms through the open windows when the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

Heated windshield

This demisting/de-icing only works with the engine running.
It also demists/de-ices the door mirrors.



- Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/switching off).

The next service is due. Have your vehicle serviced very soon.
The function can be activated whatever the outside temperature may be.
The period of operation depends on the outside temperature.
Demisting/defrosting therefore switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of electrical current.

Windscreen

With manual air conditioning
- Adjust the temperature to maximum (red).
- Adjust the air flow to maximum.



- Press this button to activate the air distribution to the "Windscreen" position; its indicator lamp comes on.

- Check that the recirculation of interior air is deactivated; its indicator lamp must be off.

► Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the "A/C" button; its indicator lamp comes on.

With automatic dual-zone air conditioning
Automatic Visibility programme
This mode allows the windscreen and side windows to be demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.



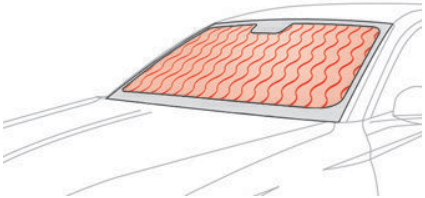
► Press this button to activate/deactivate the mode (confirmed by the illumination/ extinction of the indicator lamp).

The programme automatically manages the air conditioning (depending on version), air flow and air intake , and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.
It is possible to manually change the air flow without deactivating the automatic Visibility programme.

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

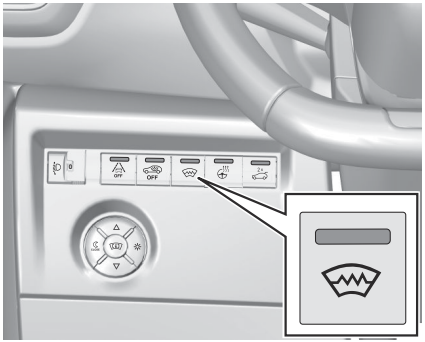
In wintry conditions, before moving off, it is essential to remove any snow or ice from the windscreen around the camera.
Otherwise, the operation of the equipment using the camera may be affected.

Heated windscreen



In cold weather, this function heats the entire windshield and complements the Automatic Visibility program to speed up the evacuation of elements that interfere with visibility (e.g. dew, mist, frost, snow), located on either side of the windshield.
It can be used both before setting off and while driving.

Switching on/off



► With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator lamp).

The period of operation depends on the outside temperature.
The function switches off automatically to prevent excessive power consumption.

Sunroof

The sunroof consists of a movable glass panel that slides over the roof and a blind that can be opened independently. Opening the sunroof automatically opens the blind.

► To operate the panoramic sunroof, use the button in the roof console.



The sunroof can be operated when the ignition is turned on (if the battery is charged enough), with the engine running, in STOP mode of Stop & Start, and up to 45 seconds after turning off the ignition.

Precautions

Do not put your head or arms through the sunroof while the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

Ensure that any luggage or accessories carried on the roof bars do not interfere with the movement of the sunroof. Do not place heavy loads on the movable glass panel of the sunroof.

If the sunroof is wet, following a rain shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before operating it. Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice - risk of damage! Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.

Regularly check the condition of the sunroof seals (e.g. presence of dust, dead leaves).
If using a car wash, check first that the roof is correctly closed and keep the highpressure jet at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

Operation

When opening the sunroof fully, the movable glass moves to a partially open position, then slides over the roof. Any intermediate position is possible.

Before operating the sunroof control button, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the sunroof.
If something is trapped when operating the sunroof, reverse the movement of the sunroof by pressing the control button in question.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof correctly.
Any manual intervention on the position of the sunroof may disturb the anti-pinch device. Perform a reinitialisation.

Anti-pinch system
If the sunroof encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.

Opening/Closing the sunroof

- To open the sunroof, use the part of the button located towards the rear.
- To close the sunroof, use the part of the button located towards the front.

Operating the button

- Pressing the button beyond its point of resistance opens or closes the sunroof fully.
- Pressing the button again stops the movement in progress.
- By keeping the button pressed (without going beyond the point of resistance), the movement of the glass stops when this button is released.
- When the sunroof is closed: pressing once without passing the point of resistance moves it to the partially open position.

▶ When the sunroof is partially open: pressing once on the front part of the button, without going beyond the point of resistance, closes it completely.

The sunroof and windows can be closed by holding down the remote control locking button.

Opening/Closing the blind

▶ To open the blind, pull its handle backwards until the desired position is reached.

▶ To close the blind, push its handle forwards until the desired position is reached.

Reinitialisation

Reinitialisation is required after reconnecting the battery, or if the sunroof malfunctions or moves in a jerky manner.

▶ Check that nothing is affecting the movement of the sunroof and that the seals are clean.

Automatic sunroof closing is no longer available, only manual closing is possible.
Remote sunroof closing with the electronic key is also no longer available in this case.



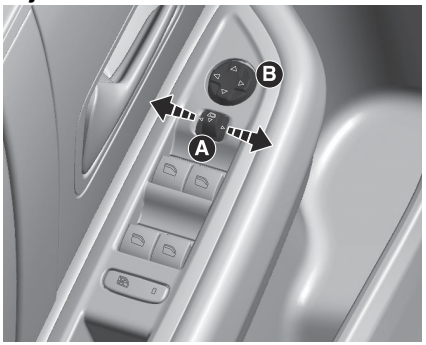
▶ With the ignition on, press and hold the front part of the button to close the sunroof.
The sunroof closes step by step. When fully closed, it performs a slight opening/closing movement.

▶ Release the button 1 second after the end of the movement.

Mirrors

As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots".
The objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Adjustment



▶ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

▶ Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.

▶ Return control **A** to its central position.

Manual folding
The mirrors can be folded manually (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.).

▶ Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding
Depending on equipment, the door mirrors can be folded electrically.



▶ From the inside, with the ignition on, place control **A** in the central position.

▶ Pull control **A** backwards.

▶ Lock the vehicle from the outside.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Back-up procedure
When a door mirror is impacted or manipulated manually, it loses its position and can become stuck. It is then possible to restore automatic operation by carrying out the following back-up procedure:

▶ With the vehicle stationary, manually manipulate the door mirror concerned, moving it from the unfolted position to the folded position.

▶ With the ignition switched on, move the control A down once or twice to reset the

system and move both door mirrors to the unfolded position.

Electric unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle.
- From inside: with the ignition on, place control A in the central position and then pull it rearwards.

Activation/Deactivation
With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen



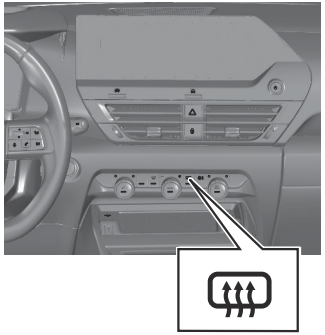
The automatic door mirror folding/ unfolding function is configured via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen



The automatic door mirror folding/ unfolding function is configured via the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

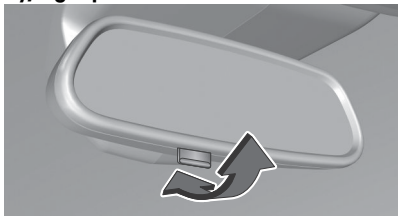
Demisting/Defrosting



The demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors works with the demisting/ defrosting of the rear screen.
For more information on **Rear window demisting/defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Interior rear view mirror
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model
Day/night position

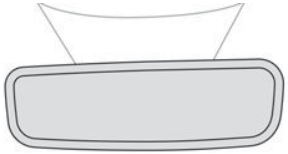


- Pull the lever to change to the anti-dazzle "night" position.
- Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Adjustment

- Adjust the mirror to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

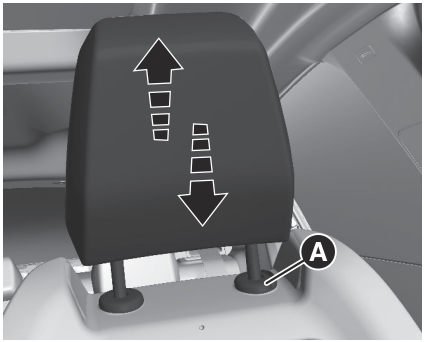


The electrochrome system uses a sensor that detects the level of exterior brightness and that coming from the rear of the vehicle, in order to automatically and gradually switch between day and night usage.

To ensure optimum visibility while manoeuvring, the mirror automatically brightens when reverse gear is engaged. The system is inoperative if the load in the boot exceeds the height of the load space cover or if the load space cover has items placed on it.

Front Head Restraints

Adjusting the height



Upwards:

- Pull the head restraint up to the desired position; you can feel the head restraint clicking into position.

Downwards:

- Press lug **A** to lower the head restraint.

The head restraint is correctly adjusted when its upper edge is level with the top of the occupant's head.

Removing a head restraint

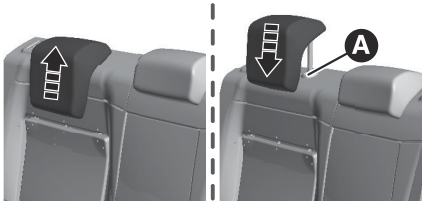
- Tilt the backrest to the rear to make it easier to remove the head restraint.
- Pull the head restraint fully up.
- Press lug **A** to release the head restraint and raise it fully.
- Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

- Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
- Push the head restraint fully down.
- Press the lug A to release the head restraint and push it down.
- Adjust the height of the head restraint.

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Rear Head Restraints



They have two positions:
A high position, for when the seat is in use:

- Pull the head restraint fully up.

A low position, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:

- Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

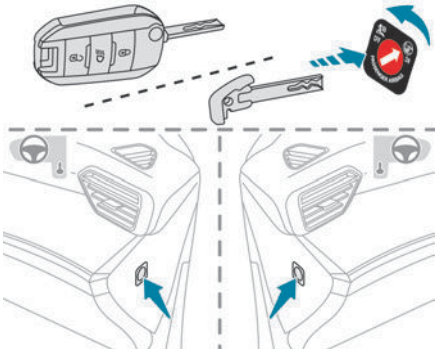
The rear head restraints can be removed.

Removing a head restraints

- Release the backrest using control 1.
- Tilt the backrest slightly forwards.
- Pull the head restraint fully up.
- Press the lug A to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

Refitting a head restraint

- Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding backrest.
- Push the head restraint fully down.
- Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.



Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints should be in place and in the high position.
The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.



Seats

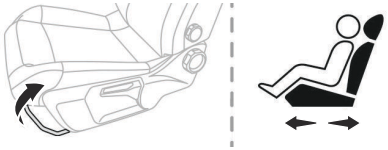
Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Keep a close watch on the power seats when adjusting them. Do not put objects beneath the power seat and do not impede its movement. There is a risk of injury, particularly for children, and of controls damage. Vehicle passengers should be informed accordingly.

The upholstery of the seats has been designed to withstand long-term wear deriving from normal use of the car. Some precautions are however required. Avoid prolonged and/or excessive rubbing against clothing accessories such as metal buckles and Velcro strips which, by applying a high pressure on the upholstery in a small area, could cause it to damage.

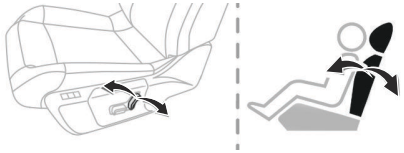
Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to allow safe airbag deployment.

Longitudinal adjustment



► Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
► Release the bar to lock the seat in position on one of the runners.

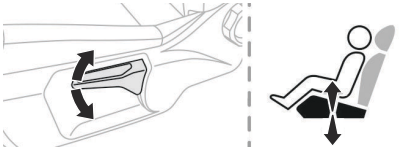
Backrest angle adjustment



► Raise the control lever to the maximum height in order to avoid noise and mechanism failure.

Height adjustment

(Driver only, depending on version)



► Raise or lower the control as many times as needed.

Avoid stepping on these plastic parts - Risk of injury or damaging the components!

Rear Seats

Bench seat with fixed cushions and split folding backrests (2/3-1/3) to adapt the boot load space.

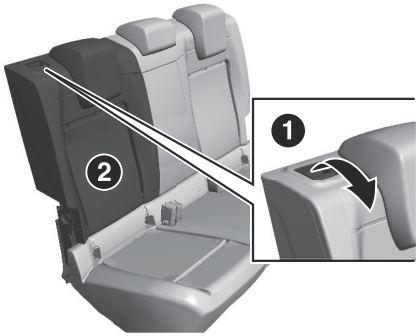
The rear seat cushion remains fixed. To increase the boot loading volume, tilt the bench seat backrest.

Folding backrests

Manoeuvring the backrests should only be done when the vehicle is stationary.

First steps:

- Lower the head restraints.
- If necessary, move the front seats forward.
- Check that no person or object might interfere with the folding of the backrests (e.g. clothing, luggage).

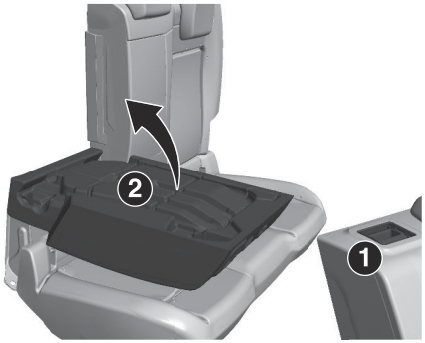


- Press the backrest release grip **1.**
- Guide the backrest **2** down to the horizontal position.

When the backrest is released, the red indicator in the release grip is visible.

Repositioning backrests

First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.



- Put the backrest **2** in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- Check that the red indicator is no longer visible in the release grip **1**.
- Ensure that the outer seat belts were not trapped during the operation.

Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forwards - risk of serious injury!

Seat Belts

Introdution

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not invert the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role properly.
To ensure the proper functioning of the belt buckles, make sure that there are no foreign bodies present (e.g. a coin) before fastening.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

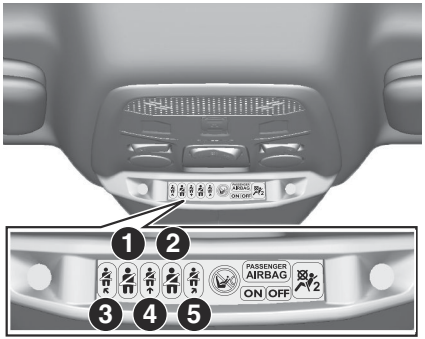
Fasten seat belt before each trip.
In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Installation
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible over the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
At the front, adjusting the position of the seat belt may require the seat height to be adjusted.
In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
– be tightened as close to the body as possible.
– be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it is not twisted.
– only be used to secure one person.
– not show signs of tearing or fraying.
– not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

Recommendations for children
Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than 1.5 metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

Maintenance
In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.
Have the seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

Safety Belts warning lamps display



1. Front left seat belt warning lamp
2. Front right seat belt warning lamp
3. Rear left seat belt warning lamp
4. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp
5. Rear right seat belt warning lamp

Not fastened/unfastened warning lamp
It comes on in red on both the instrument panel and on the seat belts warning lamps display as soon as the system detects that a seat belt is not fastened or has been unfastened.

Type 1
Front seat belt not fastened alert



When the ignition is switched on, if the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt, the

corresponding warning lamp (**1** or **2**) comes on in red. At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp flashes red, accompanied by an audible signal for around 2 minutes. After this time has elapsed, the warning lamp remains on fixed in red until the seat belt is fastened.

Rear seat belt not fastened alert



When the ignition is switched on, if one of the rear passengers has not fastened their seat belt, the corresponding warning lamp (**3**, **4** or **5**) comes on in red for 60 seconds.

Seat belt unfastened alert



After the ignition is switched on, if the driver or a passenger unfastens their seat belt, the corresponding warning lamp (**1**, **2**, **3**, **4** or **5**)

comes on in red. At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal for around 2 minutes. After this time has elapsed, the warning lamp remains on fixed in red until the seat belt has been fastened again.



With the ignition on, if the driver or a passenger fastens their seat belt, the corresponding warning lamp (**1**, **2**, **3**, **4** or **5**) comes on in green on the display.



With the ignition on, if one of the front or rear passenger seats is detected as being unoccupied, the corresponding

warning lamp (**2**, **3**, **4** or **5**) comes on in grey on the display. When there are no longer any not fastened/ unfastened alerts, the green or grey warning lamps remain on for around 30 seconds, then go off.

Type 2
Front seat belt not fastened alert



When the ignition is switched on, if the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt,

the corresponding warning lamp (**1** or **2**) comes on in red. At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp flashes red, accompanied by an audible signal for around 2 minutes. After this time has elapsed, the warning lamp remains on fixed in red until the seat belt is fastened.

Rear seat belt not fastened alert



When the ignition is switched on, if one of the rear passengers has not fastened their seat belt, the

corresponding warning lamp (**3, 4** or **5**) comes on in red for 60 seconds.

Seat belt unfastened alert



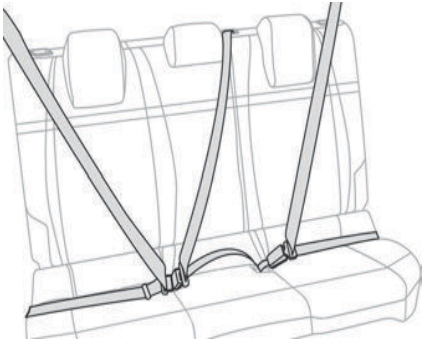
After the ignition is switched on, if the driver or a passenger unfastens their seat belt, the corresponding

warning lamp (**1, 2, 3, 4** or **5**) comes on in red. At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal for around 2 minutes. After this time has elapsed, the warning lamp remains on until the seat belt has been fastened again.

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and a force limiting system.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.
The outer seats are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

Three Points Seat Belt

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to the shape of the user. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.
The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Pyrotechnic pretensioning
This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.

Force limiting system
This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

In the event of an impact
Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment.
Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fastening

- Pull the strap, then insert the tongue into the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling on the strap.

Unfastening

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

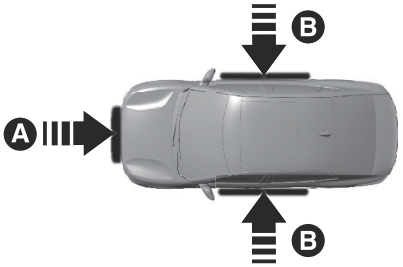
Airbag System

Airbag System Introduction

System designed to help improve the safety of the occupants sitting in the front seats and the rear outer seats, in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system.
Electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:
– In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
– In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.
The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone
B. Side impact zone

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.
Adopt a normal and upright sitting position. Fasten your seat belt and position it correctly.
Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not fix or attach anything near or in the path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed. Never modify the original definition of the vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags. Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time, discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose. After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked. All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

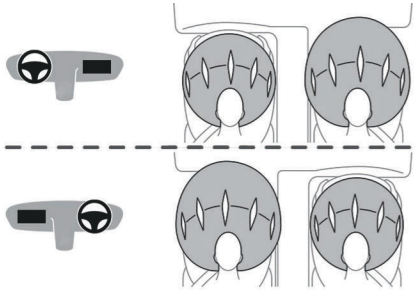
The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.

Adding accessories that change the vehicle frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts, airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not affix or attach anything near to or in the exit path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.
Do not affix or attach anything to:
– The steering wheel and dashboard.
– The seat backrests (e.g. clothing).
– The roof.

Front airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment
They deploy, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated[1], in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Front airbags
Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

Lateral airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

Deployment
The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.
The lateral airbag inflates between the chest of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

Lateral airbags
Use only approved seat covers compatible with the deployment of these airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (e.g. clothing) as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags! All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

[1] For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment
It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

Curtain airbags
Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as these help to secure the curtain airbags.

Airbag System Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Child Restraints Introduction

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:
– In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their size or weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
– Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.
– A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.

It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:
– "**rearward facing**" up to the age of 3 years old.
– "**forward facing**" over the age of 3 years old.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.

Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

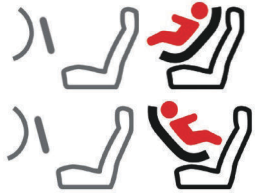
An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident. Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat.
Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.
The head restraint must always be present in the vehicle and fitted if the seat is used by an adult passenger or a child sitting in a restraint system without backrest.

Installing a booster seat
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

Additional protections
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock". Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety measure, do not leave:

- A child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.
- A child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
- The keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear
Forward-facing or rearward-facing



- Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
- Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

Centre rear seat
A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat.**

Child seat at the front



- Adjust the front passenger seat to the **maximum rear longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.**

Forward-facing



You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

Rearward-facing



The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward-facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.

Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

EN: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
DE: Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
FR: NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
ES: NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
IT: NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale

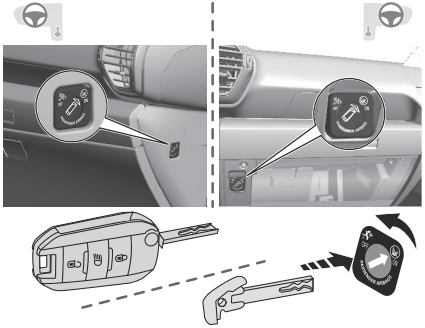
ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

Passenger airbag OFF

To ensure the safety of the child, the front passenger airbag MUST be deactivated when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed in the event of deployment of the airbag.

Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation/reactivation control

Installing a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat is strictly prohibited - risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment!



For vehicles on which it is fitted, the switch is located on the side of the dashboard or inside the glove box.

With the ignition off:

► To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "**OFF**" position.

► To reactivate it, turn the key to the "**ON**" position.

Associated warning lights

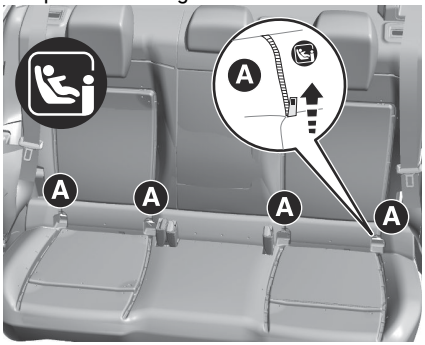
Fixed, permanent lighting to indicate deactivation.

Fixed lighting when the ignition is turned on for approximately 1 minute to indicate activation.

Seat Belt Installation

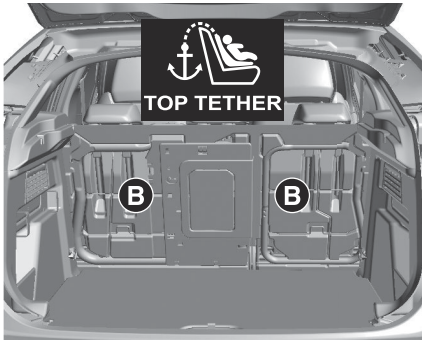
Isofix Anchorage Connectors

The seats shown below are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:

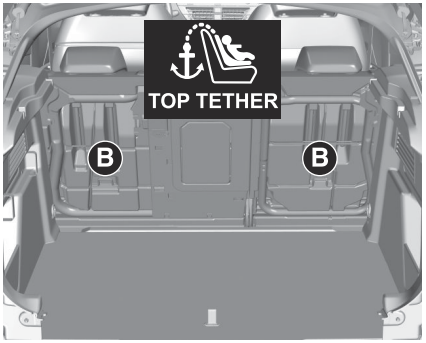


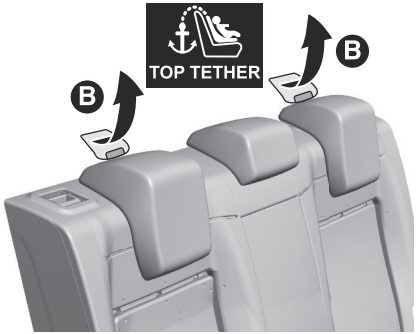
These rings are located behind zips.
The 2 latches on **ISOFIX child seats** are secured to them.
– One ring **B** called the **TOP TETHER** for attaching seats fitted with an upper strap.

C4



C4-X





⚠ An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

⚠ Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

This system prevents the child seat from tipping forwards in the event of a front impact. This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in the vehicle.
To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- ▶ Remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed).
- ▶ Pass the strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, centring it between the openings for the head restraint rods.
- ▶ Secure the upper strap hook to ring **B**.
- ▶ Tighten the upper strap.

ⓘ When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

⚠ An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

ⓘ For information about the options for fitting ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

ⓘ Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe 3 i-Size" **Size: 40 - 83 cm**


"RÖMER Baby-Safe 3 i-Size" **Size: 40 - 83 cm**
From birth to 15 months (up to 13 kg) With or without its ISOFIX base. Suitable for "rearward facing" installation only.

"RÖMER TriFix 2 i-Size" **Size: 76 - 105 cm**

From 15 months to 4 years (from 9 to 22 kg) Installed with ISOFIX and Top Tether mountings. Suitable for "forward facing" installation only.

"RÖMER KidFix i-Size" **Size: 100 - 138 cm**

From 3.5 to 12 years (from 15 to 36 kg) Can be installed with or without ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.

"GRACO Booster" **Size: over 135 cm**


"GRACO Booster" Size: over 135 cm
(from 22 to 36 kg) The child is restrained by the seat belt.

i-Size Child Seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that are anchored to the two rings **A**.
These i-Size child seats also have:
– either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**.
– or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position.
Their role is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.
For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings,** refer to the corresponding section.

TABLE FOR INSTALLATION OF UNIVERSAL, ISOFIX AND I-SIZE CHILD SEATS

In compliance with European regulations, this table indicates the possibilities for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** as well as the largest **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats for the seat positions fitted with **ISOFIX** anchorage points in the vehicle.

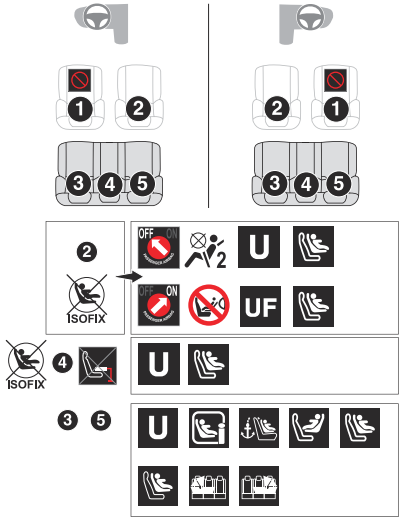
	Seat numbers					
	Front seats (j)			**Rear seats (j)**		
	**1**	**3**		**4**	**5**	**6**
	**3**	**1**		**4**	**5**	**6**
Front passenger airbag		**Deactivated "OFF" (c)**	**Activated "ON" (d)**			
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Rearward facing	no	yes **(e) (g) (h)**	no	yes	yes **(i)**	yes
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Forward facing	no	yes **(f) (g) (h)**	yes **(f) (g) (h)**	yes	yes **(i)**	yes
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Rearward facing	no	no		yes	no	yes
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Forward facing	no	no		yes	no	yes
Position equipped with a **TOP TETHER** hook	no	no		yes	no	yes
"Carrycot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no		no		
"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (R1 | R2 | R3)	no	no		R3 **(j)**	no	R3 **(j)**
"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (F2 | F2X | F3)	no	no		F3 **(j)**	no	F3 **(j)**
Booster child seat (B2 | B3)	no	**B3 (k)**		B3 **(j)**	**B3**	B3 **(j)**

Rules:

- A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible with **R1, R2** and **F2X, F2, B2.**
- A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible for **R1** and **R2.**

- A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible for **F2X** and **F2.**
- A position that is **B3** compatible is also compatible with **B2.**

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
(b) To install a **"rearward facing"** child seat at this seat position, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated (**"OFF"**).
(c) Only a **"forward facing"** child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger airbag activated (**"ON"**).
(d) For a seat with height adjustment, adjust the seat to the highest position and move it fully back, with the backrest straightened.
For a seat without height adjustment, move the seat fully back, with the backrest straightened.
(e) Never install a child seat with a support leg on the centre rear seat.
(f) Seats not fitted with "ISOFIX" mountings.
(g) Adjust the front passenger seat to the middle longitudinal position with the backrest straightened.
(h) For a "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" universal child seat (U) in groups 0, 0+, 1, 2 or 3.
(i) For a "forward facing" universal child seat (UF) in groups 1, 2 or 3.
(j) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.
(k) Adjust the front passenger seat to the fully backward position.



Key

Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.

Front passenger airbag **deactivated.**

Front passenger airbag **activated.**

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "rearward facing"** and/or **"forward facing"** (**U**) for all sizes and weight groups.

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing"** (**UF**) for groups **1, 2 & 3** only.

Seat position authorised for the installation of an **i-Size** child seat.

Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat with support leg.

Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the installation of an **universal ISOFIX child seat.**

"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**.
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
- **R3: ISOFIX large size** child seat.

"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat **for toddlers.**
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full height** child seat.

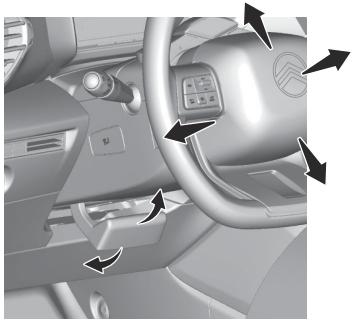
Booster child seat:

- **B2: reduced width booster seat.**

► **B3: full width booster seat.**

Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

Steering Wheel



► When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.

► Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.

► Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Steering Wheel Controls

(Depending on equipment)
In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.

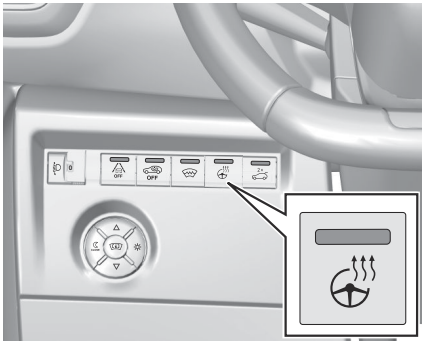
Steering Wheel Shift Paddles



► Pull the **"+"** or **"-"** paddle towards you and release to shift up or down a gear, respectively.

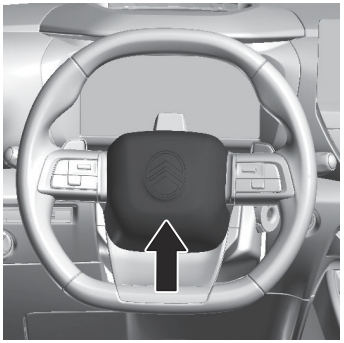
Steering Wheel Heating

(Depending on country of sale) In cold weather, this function heats the circular part of the steering wheel.
It can be activated when the outside temperature is below 20°C.



► With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/going out).
The system is automatically deactivated every time the engine is switched off

Horn



► Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Pedestrian horn (Hybrid, Rechargeable hybrid or Electric)

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching.
The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), in forward or reverse gear.
This function cannot be deactivated.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Windshield Wiper And Washer

Wiper control stalk

Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen and around the wiper arms and blades.

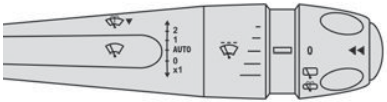
Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

With intermittent wipers



With automatic wipers



Windscreen wipers

► To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2	Fast wiping (heavy rain)
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain)
Int	Intermittent wipers
AUTO	Automatic wipers
0	Switching off
	Manual

In position 1 or 2, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced when the speed of the vehicle drops below 3 mph (5 km/h).
When the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h) again, the wiping frequency returns to the original frequency (fast or normal).

Single wipe

► Press and release the control stalk or briefly pull the control stalk towards you.

Windscreen wash

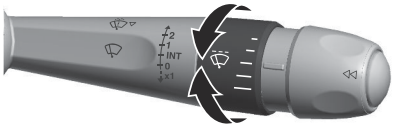
► Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

A final wiping cycle is performed when screenwashing ends.

With automatic air conditioning, any action on the screenwash control results in temporary closure of the air intake to protect the passenger compartment from any odour.

To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty.
Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products.
Never top up with water.

Front intermittent wiping
In Intermittent mode, the driver can adjust the wiping frequency by turning the ring to one of the 5 available positions.



The first (upper) position corresponds to the longest time interval between 2 wipes for light rain.
The last (lower) position corresponds to the shortest time interval between 2 wipes for heavy rain.
A rotation of the ring from a higher position to a lower position triggers a confirmation wiping.

After the ignition has been switched off for more than 1 minute with the wiper control stalk in the **INT**, **1** or **2** position, when the ignition is switched on again:
– the system works as soon as the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), if the outside temperature is below +3°C.
– the system works immediately, if the outside temperature is above +3°C.

Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor. When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.
In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Malfunction
If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

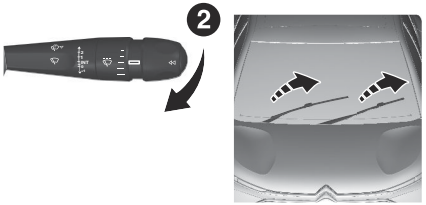
Special position of the windscreen wipers
This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care
- clean them regularly using soapy water
- avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen
- replace them at the first signs of wear

Before removing a windscreen wiper blade





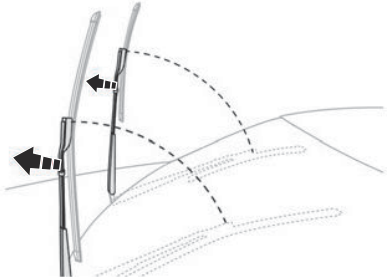
Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.

- Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a windscreen wiper blade

- To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade
Removing/Refitting at the front



- Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
- Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

- Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

- Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

Rain Sensing Wiper Control

In AUTO mode, the front wipers work automatically and adapt to the intensity of precipitation depending on the sensitivity of the sensor selected.
The rainfall detection function uses a rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.

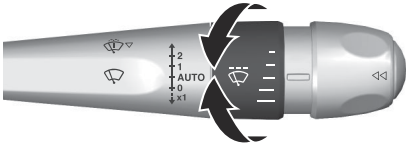
In certain weather conditions (e.g. fog, frost, snow, projections on salty roads), the driver may have to return to manual wiping.

Switching on/off

To switch on:

- Put the wiper control stalk in the AUTO position.
- Turn the ring to adjust the sensitivity of the sensor.
  A wiping cycle, accompanied by the display of a message, confirms that the request has been taken into account.
- To switch off, put the wiper control stalk in another position or in the 0 position.

Adjusting the sensitivity



The first position (upper) corresponds to the lowest sensitivity of the sensor.
The last position (lower) corresponds to the highest sensitivity of the sensor.
The higher the sensitivity, the faster the system reacts and increases the wiping frequency.
A rotation of the ring from a higher position to a lower position triggers a confirmation wiping.

After the ignition has been switched off for more than 1 minute with the wiper control stalk in the AUTO position, when the ignition is switched on again:

- the system works, depending on the volume of rain detected, as soon as the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), if the outside temperature is below +3°C.
- the system works immediately, depending on the volume of rain detected, if the outside temperature is above +3°C.

Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor. When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.
In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

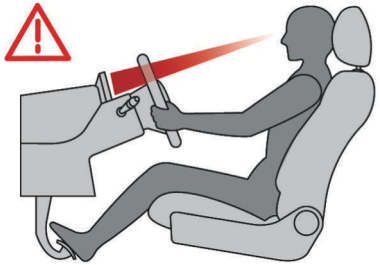
Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driver Memory Settings

For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:
– head restraint height.
– seat backrest angle.
– seat cushion height.
– longitudinal seat position.
– steering wheel height and reach.
– rear view mirror and door mirrors.

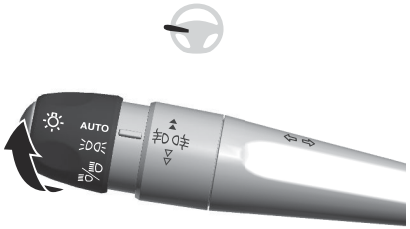


Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Exterior Lights

Lighting Controls

Main lighting

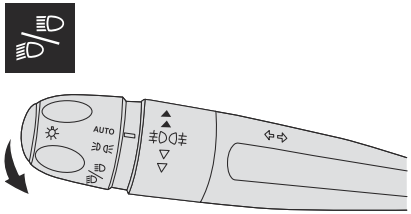


AUTO Automatic illumination of lights/daytime running lights

Sidelights only

Dipped or main beam headlights

Dipped or main beam headlights



▶ Pull the lighting control stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In **"AUTO"** and sidelamps mode, pull the lighting control stalk to switch the main beam headlamps on directly ("headlamp flash").

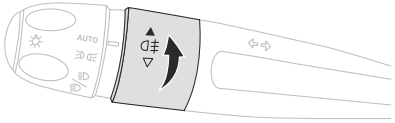
Display
Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument panel confirms that the selected lighting is on.

A fault with a lamp is signalled by the permanent illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Rear foglight



It only works if the dipped or main beam headlamps are on.



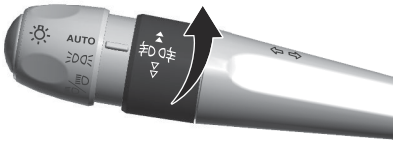
► Rotate the ring forwards/backwards to turn it on/off.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (**"AUTO"** position) the foglight and the sidelamps remain on.

Front foglights/Rear foglight



They operate with the sidelamps, dipped or main beam headlamps on.



► Rotate the ring forwards:

• once to switch on the front foglights,
• a second time to switch on the rear foglight.

► Turn in the opposite direction to switch off.

If the lighting is switched off automatically (**"AUTO"** position) or the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglights and sidelamps remain on.

► Rotate the ring backwards to switch the foglights off; the sidelamps will then switch off.

Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country).
Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guideme- home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring, to the **"AUTO"** position, then to the desired position. If the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lamps are on. They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the level of charge in the battery (entering energy economy mode).

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!



Travelling abroad
Vehicles equipped with halogen headlamps: If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the dipped beam headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Headlamp beam adjustment



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of these headlamp beams must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0	**(Initial setting)** Driver only or driver + front passenger
1	5 people
2	5 people + load in the boot
3	Driver only + load in the boot
4 5 6	Not used

Turn Signals



► Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

Automatic lighting

With the lighting control stalk in the **"AUTO"** position and if a low level of exterior brightness is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.
This system automatically changes between main and dipped beam headlights, according to the brightness and driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windschield.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the rain/ sunshine sensor, the vehicle's lamps come on and this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. For this reason, the lighting will not come on automatically.

The inner surface of the windscreen may become misted up and affect the proper operation of the rain/sunshine sensor. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Automatic lighting systems - General recommendations
The automatic lighting systems use a detection camera, located at the top of the windscreen.

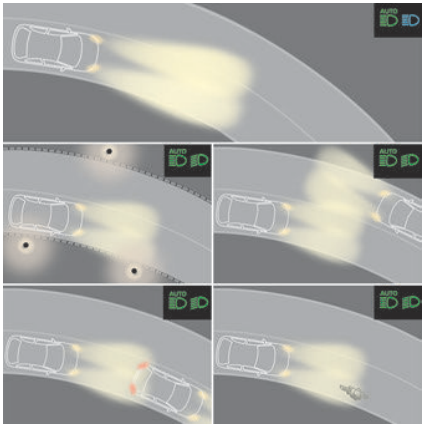
Operating limits
The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:
– When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
– If the windscreen is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
– If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.
The system is not able to detect:
– Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
– Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. travelling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
– Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

Maintenance
Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP DIPPING

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems.**

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the **"AUTO"** position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.



This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 45 km/h (28 mph). When the speed falls below 35 km/h (22mph), the function is no longer operational.

Activation/Deactivation
With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

The state of the system is stored when the ignition is switched off.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

Operation
If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:

The main beam headlamps come on automatically. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlamps to be lit:

The dipped beam headlamps remain lit. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument pa The dipped beam headlamps remain lit. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel.

The function is deactivated if the foglights are switched on.
When the foglights are switched off, the function is automatically reactivated.



This indicator lamp goes out when the function is deactivated.

Pause
If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- Switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam to pause the function.
  If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam.

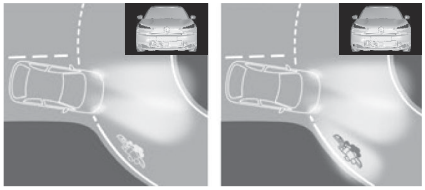
If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

- To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam.

Malfunction
If a malfunction occurs with the system or the camera, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Corner Light

This system makes use of the beam from a front foglight to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres).



Without/With corner lighting
Activation/Deactivation
With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen



It is configured via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen



It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Switching on/off
This system starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on.

or

- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

It becomes inactive:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.
- above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Guide me home / Welcome lighting

Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic
With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the **"AUTO"** position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen



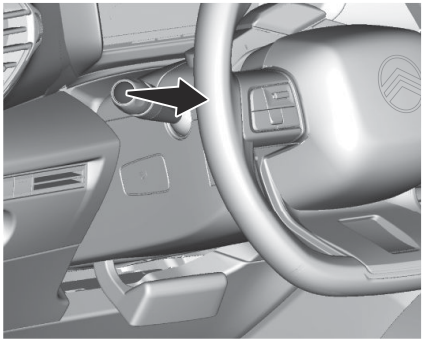
You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen



You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the duration of the guide-mehome lighting in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Manual



► With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to activate/ deactivate the function.

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Welcome lighting
When the vehicle is unlocked in low light conditions and the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function is activated, this system automatically switches on:

► Outside, sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps.

► Inside, courtesy lamps and footwell lighting.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the welcome lighting duration in the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the duration of the welcome lighting in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Door mirror spotlamps
These spotlamps facilitate access to the vehicle by lighting the ground near the front doors.

When the front courtesy lamp switch is in this position, the spotlamps come on automatically:

► when the vehicle is unlocked.

► when a door is opened.

► when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

Whatever the position of the front courtesy lamp switch, they also come on with the welcome lighting and guide-me-home lighting functions.
They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

Interior Lights

Courtesy lamps



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front reading lamps



3. Rear courtesy lamp
4. Rear reading lamps

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when the key is removed from the ignition switch.
- when a door is opened.
- - when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked.
- when the ignition is switched on.
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

In "Permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- With the ignition off, approximately 10 minutes.
- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

When the front courtesy lamp is in the "Permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, unless it is in the "Permanently off" position.

To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the "Permanently off" position.

Reading lamps

- With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

Do not place anything against the courtesy lamps.

Boot Lights

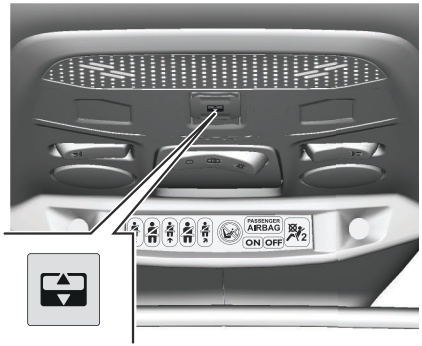
It comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.
The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.
- in energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Sunroof

The sunroof consists of a movable glass panel that slides over the roof and a blind that can be opened independently. Opening the sunroof automatically opens the blind.

- To operate the panoramic sunroof, use the button in the roof console.



The sunroof can be operated when the ignition is turned on (if the battery is charged enough), with the engine running, in STOP mode of Stop & Start, and up to 45 seconds after turning off the ignition.

Precautions

Do not put your head or arms through the sunroof while the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

Ensure that any luggage or accessories carried on the roof bars do not interfere with the movement of the sunroof. Do not place heavy loads on the movable glass panel of the sunroof.

If the sunroof is wet, following a rain shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before operating it.
Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice - risk of damage!
Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.

Regularly check the condition of the sunroof seals (e.g. presence of dust, dead leaves).
If using a car wash, check first that the roof is correctly closed and keep the high-pressure jet at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

Operation
When opening the sunroof fully, the movable glass moves to a partially open position, then slides over the roof. Any intermediate position is possible.

Before operating the sunroof control button, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the sunroof.
If something is trapped when operating the sunroof, reverse the movement of the sunroof by pressing the control button in question.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof correctly.
Any manual intervention on the position of the sunroof may disturb the anti-pinch device.
Perform a reinitialisation.

Anti-pinch system
If the sunroof encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.

Opening/closing the sunroof

- To open the sunroof, use the part of the button located towards the rear.
- To close the sunroof, use the part of the button located towards the front.

Operating the button

- Pressing the button beyond its point of resistance opens or closes the sunroof fully.
- Pressing the button again stops the movement in progress.
- By keeping the button pressed (without going beyond the point of resistance), the movement of the glass stops when this button is released.
- When the sunroof is closed: pressing once without passing the point of resistance moves it to the partially open position.
- When the sunroof is partially open: pressing once on the front part of the button, without going beyond the point of resistance, closes it completely.

The sunroof and windows can be closed by holding down the remote control locking button.

Opening/closing the blind

- To open the blind, pull its handle backwards until the desired position is reached.
- To close the blind, push its handle forwards until the desired position is reached.

Reinitialisation
Reinitialisation is required after reconnecting the battery, or if the sunroof malfunctions or moves in a jerky manner.

- Check that nothing is affecting the movement of the sunroof and that the seals are clean.

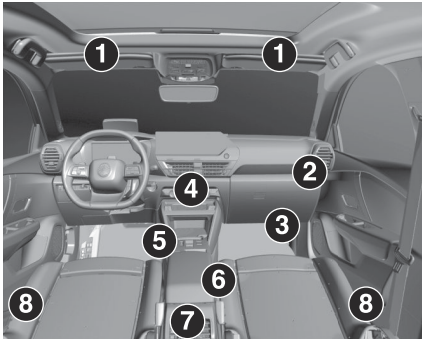


- With the ignition on, press and hold the front part of the button to close the sunroof.

The sunroof closes step by step. When fully closed, it performs a slight opening/closing movement.

- Release the button 1 second after the end of the movement.

Interior Storage - Interior Features



1. Sun visor
2. Dashboard drawer
3. Glove box
4. Wireless smartphone charger
   USB sockets (type A/type C)
5. Storage compartment
   12 V socket
6. Storage compartment with cup holders
7. Centre armrest with storage compartment
8. Door pockets

Make sure you do not leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire. Risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

Sun visor

► With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; depending on the version, the mirror is illuminated automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage areas.

Always ensure that loads in the vehicle are correctly secured. Any objects simply placed in the vehicle can become projectiles in the event of sudden braking. Risk of injury!

Glove Compartment

► To open the glove box, lift the handle.

With the ignition on, the glove box is lit when open.

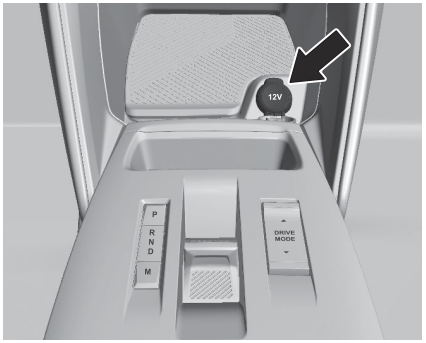
Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

Dashboard drawer

► To open the drawer, press the handle and pull.

Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

12V Power Outlets



► Plug in a 12 V accessory (with a maximum rated power of 120 W) using a suitable adapter.

Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.

The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

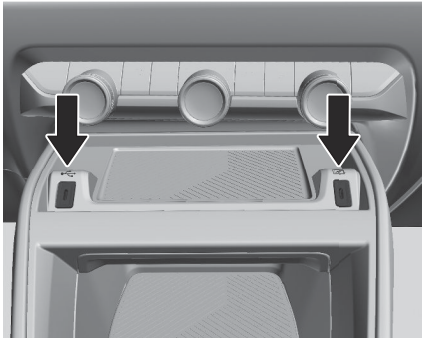
USB Ports

These symbols determine the type of use of a USB socket:

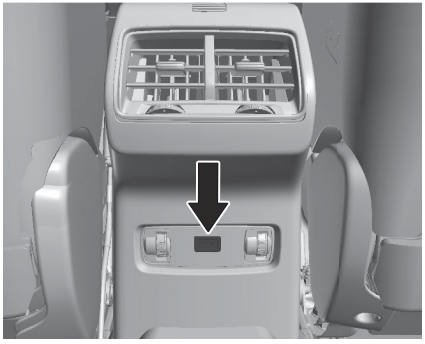
With the ignition on, press and hold the front part of the button to close the sunroof.

Power supply and recharging. Likewise, plus exchange of multimedia data with the audio system.

Front



Rear



USB sockets allow the connection of a portable device.

► The USB socket at the front on the left-hand side also allows a smartphone to be connected by Android Auto® or CarPlay®, enabling certain smartphone applications to be used on the touch screen.
For best results, use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.
These applications can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or the audio system controls.

When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.
For more information about how to use this equipment, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Wireless smartphone charger



This system allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi 1.1 standard.
The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.
A mat can also be used provided that it is approved by the Manufacturer.
The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.
The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.
Charging is managed by the smartphone.
With the Keyless Entry and Start system, the charger's operation may be briefly disrupted when a door is opened or the ignition is switched off.

Charging

► With the charging area clear, place a device in its centre.

When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator lamp lights up green.
It remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

Do not leave metal objects (e.g. coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged - Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!

When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop.

Checking operation

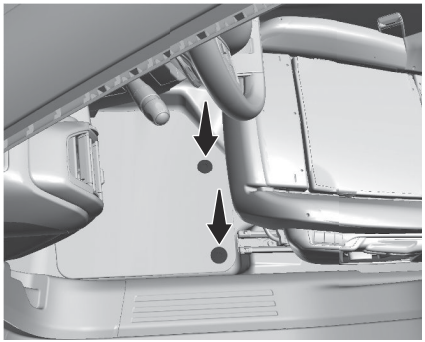
The state of the indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

State of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging complete.
Fixed green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed orange	Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.

If the indicator lamp is fixed orange:
– remove the device, then place it back in the centre of the charging zone.
or
– remove the device and try again in a quarter of an hour.
If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Floor Mats

Fitting



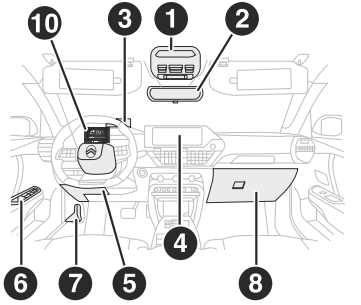
When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet (a "click" indicates proper locking).
The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

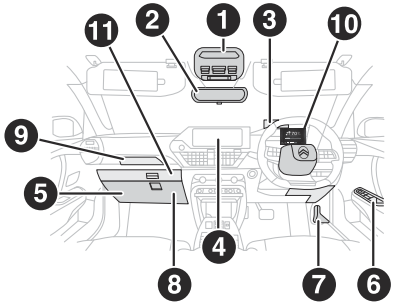
Removing/refitting

- To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
- To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing down.
- Check that the mat is secured correctly.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals: -Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
-Never fit one mat on top of another.
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/ speed limiter.
The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

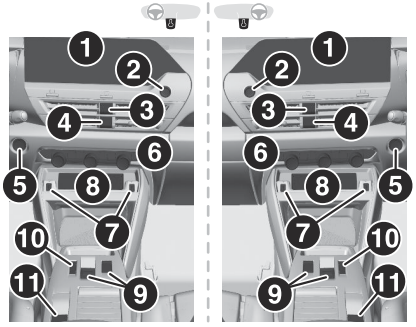
Instrument Panel





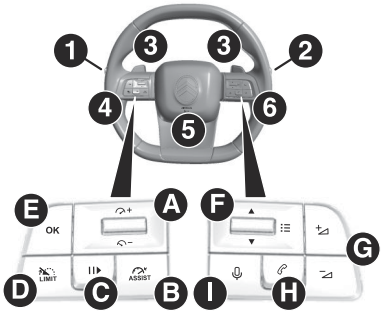
1. Courtesy light/Front reading lights
   Emergency and assistance call buttons
   Sunroof
   Warning lights display for seat belts and front passenger airbag
2. Interior rear view mirror
3. Head-up display
4. Touchscreen
5. Fusebox
6. Electric windows
   Electric door mirrors
7. Hood release
8. Glove box
9. Smart Pad Support Citröen
10. Digital Instrument panel
11. Dashboard drawer

Center console



1. 10-inch touch screen
2. Touch screen on/off and volume control
   Direct access to the **Driving** menu
   Access to the touch screen menus
   Access to the Shortcuts for driving aids
   Access to the HOME pages
3. Hazard warning lights
4. Central locking
5. Switching the engine on/off
6. Air conditioning Heated seats
7. USB sockets (type A/type C)
8. Storage compartment or Wireless smartphone charger
9. Gearbox or drive selector
10. Choice of driving mode
11. Electric parking brake

Steering-mounted controls



1. External lighting controls/Direction indicators/Select the instrument panel display mode
2. Wiper controls/Screenwash/Trip computer
3. Automatic gearbox control paddles
4. Controls for Cruise control/Speed limiter/Adaptive cruise control

A. Increase/Decrease the speed setting
Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front (Adaptive cruise control)

B. Select/Deselect the cruise control function

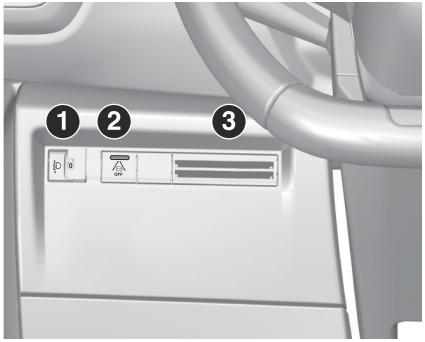
C. Start/Pause of the Speed limiter or Cruise control with the speed setting saved
Confirmation of vehicle restart after automatic stop (Adaptive cruise control with Stop&Go function)

D. Select/Deselect the speed limiter function

E. Activation of the Speed limiter or Cruise control with the speed setting saved.
Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition system

5. Horn/Driver front airbag
6. Audio system controls
F. Select previous/next media
G. Decrease/Increase volume
H. Access the Telephone menu
Manage calls
I. Voice commands

Side control bar





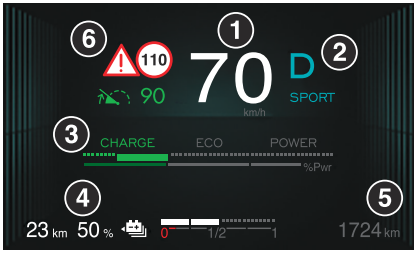
1. Headlight beam height adjustment
2. Lane keeping assist
3. Card storage
4. Alarm
5. Heated windshield
6. Heated steering wheel
7. Tailgate opening
8. Head-up display controls

Digital instrument panel

Digital instrument panel
The digital instrument panel can be personalised.

Depending on the display page selected, certain information is hidden or presented differently.

5" screen



7" screen



1. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)
2. Gearbox selector position and gear on automatic gearbox
Drive selector position (Electric)
Gear change indicator (Petrol)
Driving mode selected
3. Customizable area
4. Fuel gauge (Petrol)
Charge level indicator (Electric)
Remaining range (miles or km)
5. Total odometer (miles or km)
6. Cruise control or speed limiter settings
Display of recognised signs
Indication of danger zones (with connected navigation)

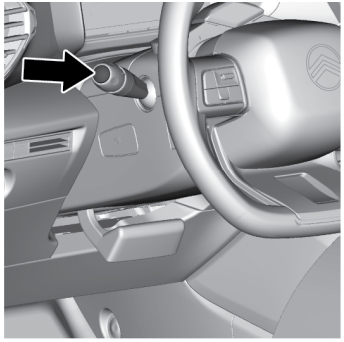
Information displayed on the instrument panel

The information displayed on the instrument panel (e.g. warning lamps, indicators) may have a fixed or variable location depending on the page or the driving aid activated.

For the functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

Display language and units
These depend on the touch screen settings. When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).

Choice of the displayed page
By default, pages are memorised in the instrument panel.



► Press the button located at the end of the lighting control stalk to scroll through the different pages.

The new page is applied immediately.

When a message is displayed in a temporary window, pressing this button will cause this window to disappear immediately.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen
It is possible to choose between the following pages:
– **"Minimum"**: digital speedometer, gearbox selector position, driving range, total odometer and:

► Fuel gauge (Petrol).

► Battery charge indicator (Electric).

► Power indicator (Electric).

– **"Dials"** (Petrol): digital speedometer, selector position, driving range, distance recorder, fuel gauge, rev counter and engine coolant temperature indicator.
– **"Trip computer"** (Petrol, Hybrid and Electric): digital speedometer, selector position, driving range, distance recorder, fuel gauge, current information and selected trip (1 or 2).

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen
The available settings operations are: addition, deletion and layout of pages and widgets.
It is possible to memorise up to 5 pages.
Each page may contain 1 or 2 widgets:
– With 1 widget, large display in central position.
The colour for each driving mode may be personalised. A default setting is suggested.
The setting also matches the interior ambient lighting (depending on availability).

The settings are changed via the **Settings > Customization** touch screen application.

For further information on **Personalisation - Instrument Panel**, refer to the corresponding section in the audio equipment and telematics systems.

Instrument Cluster

General info

Depending on the display page selected, certain information is hidden or presented differently.

Total odometer
The total odometer measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.
With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (miles or km): the displayed speed must be in the local country's official unit (mph or km/h). The unit is changed via the screen's configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Lighting dimmer
This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted manually to suit the ambient light level.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

Press **Settings** from the status bar or from the menus buttons.

Select **"Brightness"** or **"Screen configuration"**, depending on equipment.

Adjust the instrument panel and screen brightness by using the arrows or moving the slider.

Press this button to save and exit, depending on equipment.

You can also switch off the screen:

Press **Settings** from the status bar or from the menus buttons.

Select **"Turn off screen"** or **"Dark"**, depending on equipment.

The screen goes off completely.

► Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to turn it on.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

It is configured in the **Settings > Brightness** touch screen application.

► In the **"Cockpit"** category, press or move the slider to the desired setting.

Trip computer

Displays information related to the current trip (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).
Data displayed on the instrument panel



► Pressing the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk displays the following tabs in turn:

Current information:

► Current consumption (Petrol [l/100]/Hybrid [l/100]/Electric [kWh/100])

► % ZEV time counter (Hybrid)

► Stop & start time counter (Petrol)

Trips **"1"** then **"2"**:

► Average speed.

► Average consumption.

► Distance travelled.

Trip reset

► When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds.

Trips "**1**" and "**2**" are independent and are used in the same way.

Range
(miles or km)

Distance that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may vary following a change in driving style or terrain, leading to a significant change in current fuel consumption.
When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).
Dashes appearing permanently in place of numbers while driving indicates a malfunction. Contact a manufacturer dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current consumption
(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h) (Petrol).

Average consumption
(mpg or l/100 km or km/l) (miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh) (Electric)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed
(mph or km/h)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled
(miles or km)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter



(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start function, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.

Manual test

This function allows you to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen



It can be accessed via the **"Check"** button in the Driving touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen



It can be accessed via the **Settings> Vehicle** touch screen application.

▶ Select **Safety > Diagnostics.**

The following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

▶ tire pressures.

▶ Engine oil level (depending on engine).

▶ Next service due.

▶ Current alerts.

This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings
The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on
Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.
For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Persistent warning lamp

The details of causes and actions to take are given in the **Complete Handbook**.

If a red or orange warning light comes on, there may be fault which needs further investigation.
If a light remains lit
The cross-references marked **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** indicate whether you need to contact a professional.
(1): You must stop the vehicle.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
(2): Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
(3): Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Red warning/indicator lamps

STOP
A serious fault with the engine, braking system



Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Engine self-diagnostics system (Petrol)



Fixed.
A major engine fault has been detected.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

Maximum engine coolant temperature



Fixed.
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.

Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Engine oil pressure (Petrol)



Fixed.
Oil pressure is insufficient. Carry out (1) and then (2).

System malfunction (Hybrid or Electric)



Fixed.
A fault has been detected in the system (electric motor or traction battery).

Carry out (1) and then (2).

Cable connected (Electric)



Fixed when the ignition is switched on.
The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.



Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message.

It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.
Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

Traction battery overheating (Hybrid or Electric)



Fixed, combined with the STOP warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The traction battery's temperature is too high.
Carry out (1).
Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.
Carry out (2).

Traction battery malfunction (Hybrid or Electric)



Fixed, combined with the Service warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

The traction battery has a fault.
Carry out (2).

12 V battery charge



Fixed.
The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).

Carry out (1).
If the electric parking brake stops working, immobilise the vehicle:
► With the automatic gearbox or drive selector, fit the chock against one of the wheels.
Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Braking



Fixed.
The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.

Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).



Fixed. The electronic brake f Fixed. The electronic brake fom is fault.

Electric Parking brake



Fixed.
The electric parking brake is applied.



Flashing.
Application/release is faulty.
Carry out (1): park on flat ground (on a level surface).

With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select mode P.
Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).

Door(s) open



Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access.
An audible signal supplements

the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).
A door or the boot is not properly closed.

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened



Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal. A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

Orange warning/indicator lamps

Service



Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more minor faults, for which there is/ are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.
You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.
For other faults, such as with the tire underinflation detection system, carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more major faults, for which there is/ are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Audible Warning System fault: Repair needed ".**

The audible warning system is in failure.
The following driving aids may be disturbed or unavailable: – Road signs recognition.

- ▶ Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
- ▶ Lane keeping assist.
- ▶ Driver Attention Warning.

Carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.

Carry out (2).



Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.

The servicing interval has been exceeded.
The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.

Braking



Fixed.
A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.

Drive carefully.

Carry out (3).

Malfunction (with electric parking brake)



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".

The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.
If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control is faulty.
The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of a fault with the control.
Carry out (2).



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".

The electric parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
When stationary, to immobilise the vehicle:
▶ Pull the electric parking brake control and hold it for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.
If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:
▶ Park on a level surface.
▶ With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select mode **P**, then place the supplied chock against one of the wheels.
Then carry out (2).

Automatic functions deactivated (electric parking brake)



Fixed.
The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated.
If automatic application/release is no longer possible:
► Start the engine.
► Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
► Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
► Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
► Release the control.
► Depress and hold the brake pedal.
► Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
► Release the control and the brake pedal.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)



Fixed.
The anti-lock braking system has a fault.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Power steering



Fixed.
The power steering has a fault. Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Engine self-diagnostic system (Petrol or Hybrid)



Flashing.
The engine management system has a fault.

There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.
You **must** carry out (2).



Fixed.
The emissions control system has a fault.

The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.
Carry out (3) without delay.

Engine self-diagnostic system (Petrol or Hybrid)



Fixed.

A minor engine fault has been detected.
Carry out (3).
The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Traction Control System (TCS)



Flashing.
DSC/TCS system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.



Fixed.
The DSC/TCS system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Emergency brake malfunction (with electric parking brake)



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.

If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (3).

Hill start assist



Fixed, accompanied by the message **"Anti roll-back system fault"**.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Traction Control System (TCS)



Fixed.
The system is deactivated.

The DSC/TCS system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is started, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.

Under-inflation



Fixed.
The pressure in one or more tires is too low.

Check the pressure of the tires as soon as possible.
Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.

The tire pressure monitoring system is faulty.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.
Check the tire pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Road signs recognition



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual "**.
The sensor is masked.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera
or
Remains on for 10s when the over-speed sound is deactivated in the screen.

Airbags



Airbag fault lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.

Fixed, associated with the Service warning lamp and accompanied by the display of a message.
One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.
Carry out (3).

Front passenger airbag (ON)



Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is activated.

The control is set to the "ON" position.
In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag (OFF)



Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated.

The control is set to the “OFF” position.
A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).

Low fuel level (Petrol or Hybrid)



Fixed, with the reserve level shown in red, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

When it first comes on, you have **approximately 6 litres of fuel** remaining in the tank (reserve).
Until the fuel level is topped up, this alert will be repeated every time the ignition is switched on, with increasing frequency as the fuel level decreases and approaches zero.
Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.
Never drive until completely empty, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Low traction battery level (Electric)



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal.
The state of charge of the traction battery is low.

View the remaining range.
Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

Tortoise mode with limited driving range (Electric)



Fixed.
The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.

The engine power gradually decreases.
You must put the vehicle on charge.
If the warning lamp remains lit, carry out (2).

Pedestrian horn (Hybrid or Electric)



Fixed.
Horn fault detected.
Carry out (3).

The engine power gradually decreases.

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake



Flashing.
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce

the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.
For more information, refer to the Driving section.



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The system has been deactivated via the touch screen.



Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual "**.

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.



Fixed.

The system has a fault.
If these warning lamps come on after the engine is switched off and then restarted, carry out (3).

Lane keeping assist



Flashing.
You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.

The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).
For more information, refer to the Driving section.



Fixed.
The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby



Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual "**.
The sensor is masked.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.



Fixed.

The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Driver Attention Warning (Distraction detection)



Fixed.
The system is deactivated.



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual ".**
The sensor is masked.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Foot on the brake (Electric)
Engine self-diagnostic system



Fixed.
The engine system or emissions control system has a fault.

The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.
Carry out (3) quickly.

Rear foglight



Fixed.
The lamp is on.

Foot on the brake



Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.

With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position **P**.

Green warning/indicator lamps

Vehicle ready to drive (Electric)



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal when it comes on.

The vehicle is ready to drive and the thermal comfort systems are available.
The indicator lamp goes out upon reaching a speed greater than 5 km/h. It lights up again when the vehicle speed is 0 km/h and the gear position is in neutral **(N)**.

Stop & Start (Petrol)

Fixed.
When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.

Flashing temporarily.
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.

For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Direction indicators

Direction indicators with audible signal. The direction indicators are on.

Dipped beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Sidelamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Front foglights

Fixed.
The front foglights are on.

Blue warning/indicator lamps
Main beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Black/white warning lamps

Service

Flashing.
A fault has been detected. Carry out (3).

Fixed.
The servicing interval has been exceeded.

Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible. Carry out (3).

SERVICE INDICATOR

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (miles or kilometres) and/or time (months or days). The alert is given at whichever of these two terms is reached first. The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel.
Depending on the version of the vehicle:
- The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
- An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service. The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

Service spanner

On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.

Between 1,860 and 620 miles (3,000 and 1,000 km) or 60 and 21 days remain before the next service is due.

Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km) or 21 days.

Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service spanner flashing

Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.

The servicing interval has been exceeded.
Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator
The service indicator must be reset after each service.
If you have serviced your vehicle yourself:

► Switch the ignition off.



► Press and hold the button located on the end of the lighting control stalk.

► Switch on the ignition without starting the engine; a temporary display window appears and a countdown begins.

► When the display indicates =0, release the lighting control stalk button; the spanner symbol disappears.

If you disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Reminder of the servicing information
With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

Servicing information is accessible by pressing the **"Check"** button in the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

Servicing information is accessible using the **Settings > Vehicle** application on the touch screen.

► Then select **Safety > Diagnostics**.

Engine oil level indicator
(Depending on version)
On versions fitted with an electric gauge, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the servicing information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

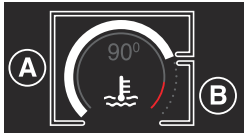
Oil level correct
This is indicated by the message **"Oil level correct"** (depending on the instrument panel).

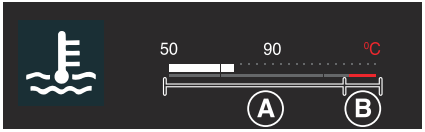
Low oil level
This is indicated by the message **"Oil level incorrect"** (depending on the instrument panel), accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.
If a low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil gauge malfunction
This is indicated by the message **"Oil level measurement invalid"** (depending on the instrument panel), accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a malfunction of the electric gauge, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located in the engine compartment.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Coolant temperature indicator
Depending on the type of instrument panel, this information is only available in the instrument panel's personalisable area.





With the engine running:
– In zone **A** , the temperature is correct.
– In zone **B** , the temperature is too high.
The associated warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp light up in red on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

For hybrid versions

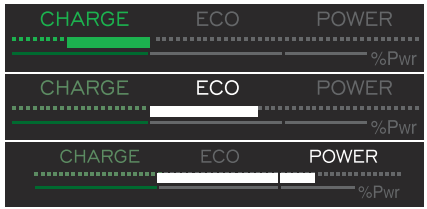
POWER **High power demand, using the combined capabilities of the petrol engine and the electric motor.**
The slider is located in this zone during more dynamic driving phases when high levels of performance are being demanded.

ECO **Optimal use of energy (internal combustion or electric).**
The slider is located in this zone when driving under electric power and when optimal use is being made of the petrol engine, both accessible by adopting a suitable driving style.

CHARGE **Energy recovery for recharging the traction battery.**
The slider is located in this zone during deceleration: taking your foot off the accelerator pedal or braking.

When the ignition is switched on and before the engine is started, the power indicator only displays **"OFF"**.

Power indicator (Electric)



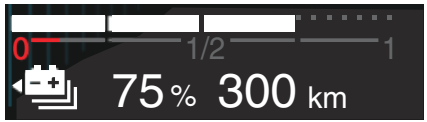
CHARGE Traction battery charging during deceleration and braking.

ECO Moderate energy consumption and optimised driving range.

POWER Energy consumption by the drive train during acceleration.

Charge level indicator (Electric)





The traction battery's actual charge level and the remaining range are displayed continuously when the vehicle is started.

With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator.

Associated warning lamps
Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level:
1st level: Reserve



The state of charge of the traction battery is low.
Fixed and indicator in the red zone, accompanied by an audible signal.

- View the remaining range on the instrument panel.
- Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

2nd level: Critical



The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.

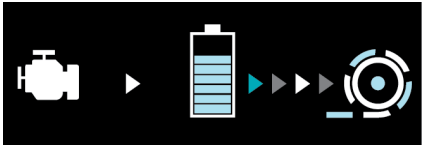
Fixed, together with the reserve warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal.

- You must put the vehicle on charge.

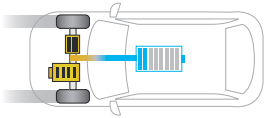
The remaining range is no longer calculated. The drive train power gradually decreases.
The heating and air conditioning are switched off (even if the thermal comfort consumption indicator is not at the "**ECO**" level).

Flow indicator (Electric)
The flow indicator displays the energy flows in the vehicle in real time.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen



With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen



The indicator changes colour depending on how energy from the traction battery is being used:

- Blue: energy consumption.
- Green: energy recovery

This indicator does not represent the battery's actual level of charge.

Thermal comfort consumption indicator (Electric)

(Depending on version) It is available in the display pages of the instrument panel.



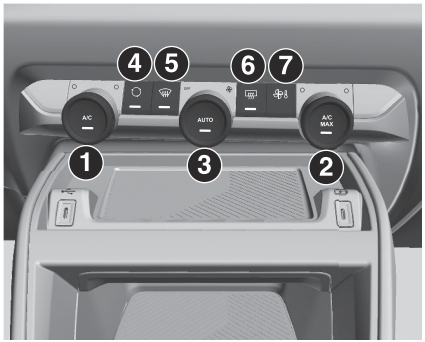
The gauge shows the consumption of the traction battery's electrical energy by the thermal comfort devices in the passenger compartment.
The devices in question are the heating and air conditioning systems.
This equipment can be used:
– If the vehicle is not plugged in, when the **READY** light is lit.
– If the vehicle is plugged in, when the ignition is switched on ("Lounge" mode).
Selecting **ECO** mode limits the performance of some of this equipment.
The thermal comfort consumption indicator then moves into the **"ECO"** zone.

To quickly heat or cool the passenger compartment, feel free to temporarily select the maximum heating or cooling setting.
When the heating is on maximum, the gauge on the thermal comfort consumption indicator is in the **MAX** zone. When the air conditioning is on maximum, it stays in the **ECO** zone.
Excessive use of thermal comfort equipment, particularly at low speed, can significantly decrease the vehicle's range.
Remember to optimise equipment settings upon achieving the desired level of comfort, and adjust them if necessary whenever you start the vehicle.
After an extended period without using the heating, you may notice a slight odour during the first few minutes of use.

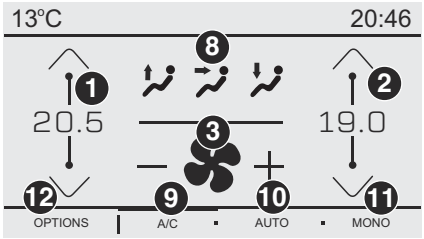
Climate Controls

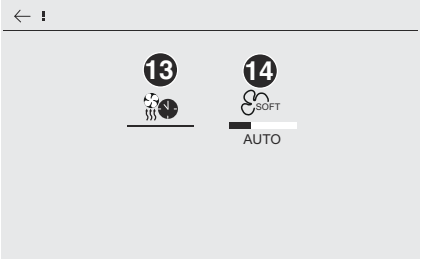
This system automatically controls the activation of the air conditioning system, regulating the temperature, air flow and air distribution inside the passenger compartment.
To adjust the system, use the central controls for basic functions (temperature, fan, etc.) or use the **Climate** application on the touchscreen for expert functions (distribution, SYNC, etc.).

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen



Central controls





Touch screen

1. Left-hand side temperature adjustment
   Air conditioning on/off (central controls)
2. Right-hand side temperature adjustment
   Maximum air conditioning (central controls)
3. Adjusting the air flow
   Automatic Comfort programme (central controls)
4. Interior air recirculation
5. Automatic Visibility programme
6. Rear screen demisting/de-icing
7. Direct access to the **Climate** menu
8. Adjusting the air distribution
9. Air conditioning on/off
10. Automatic Comfort programme
11. Mono-zone/Dual-zone
12. Access to the secondary page
13. Temperature pre-conditioning (depending on version)
14. Selection of setting for the Automatic Comfort programme (Soft/Normal/Fast).

This system works with the engine running but access to the ventilation and its controls remains possible with the ignition on.

Adjusting the temperature
The driver and front passenger can each choose their own temperature setting.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

► Turn the knob **1** or **2** or press one of the buttons **1** or **2** on the touch screen to increase (red) or decrease (blue) the value.

It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3°C in the settings for left and right.

Automatic Comfort programme
This automatic mode ensures optimum management of the passenger compartment temperature, air flow and air distribution, based on the selected comfort level.

► Press knob **3** on the central controls or button **10** on the touch screen to the air conditioning system's automatic mode.

The indicator lamp in the button lights up when the air conditioning system is operating automatically.
You can adjust the intensity of the automatic Comfort programme by using the **"OPTIONS"** button to select one of the available settings:

► **"Soft"**: provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

► **"Normal"**: offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

► **"Fast"**: provides strong and effective air flow.

To change the current setting (shown by the corresponding indicator lamp), press button 14 repeatedly until the desired setting is displayed.
To ensure passenger comfort in the rear seats, favour **"Normal"** and **"Fast"** settings.
This setting is associated with automatic mode only. However, on deactivation of **AUTO** mode, the indicator lamp for the most recently selected setting remains on.
Changing the setting does not reactivate **AUTO** mode if it was deactivated.

In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Manual control
It is possible to manually adjust one or more of these functions, while the system retains automatic control of the other functions:
– air flow.
– air distribution.
The indicator lamp in the **"AUTO"** button goes out if a setting is changed.

► Press knob **3** or button **10** of the touch screen again to reactivate the automatic Comfort programme.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in according to the request.
When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops.
"OFF" is displayed alongside the fan.

Adjusting the air distribution

▶ Press the buttons **8** on the touch screen to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.


Windscreen and side windows


Central and side air vents


Footwells

The lighting of the button indicates that air is being blown in the specified direction.
It is possible to activate the following buttons simultaneously:

▶ Central and side air vents + footwells

▶ Windscreen and side windows + footwells

Air conditioning on/off
The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It is used to:
– lower the temperature in summer,
– increase the effectiveness of demisting in winter, above 3°C.

▶ Press knob **1** or button **9** on the touch screen to activate/deactivate the air conditioning.

When the system is activated, the indicator lamp comes on.

Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is disabled.
To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air recirculation for a brief period. Then return to the intake of exterior air.
Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

Maximum air conditioning
This function automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, the air distribution towards the central and side air vents, the air flow to maximum and activates interior air recirculation.

▶ Press knob **2** to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/switching off).

Once the function is deactivated, the system returns to the previous settings.

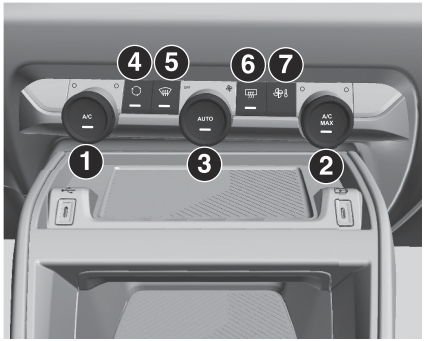
Mono-zone/Dual-zone
The passenger temperature setting can be linked to the driver's setting (mono-zone function).

▶ Press button **11** to activate the **"MONO"** function.

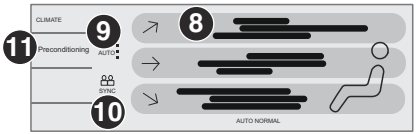
The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons (dual-zone function).

Ventilation with the ignition on
When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the air flow settings and the air distribution in the passenger compartment, for a period which depends on the battery charge.
This function does not operate the air conditioning.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen
This system automatically controls the activation of the air conditioning system, regulating the temperature, air flow and air distribution inside the passenger compartment.
To adjust the system, use the central controls for basic functions (temperature, fan, etc.) or use the **Climate** application on the touchscreen for expert functions (distribution, SYNC, etc.).



Central controls



Touch screen

1. Left-hand side temperature adjustment
   Air conditioning on/off
2. Right-hand side temperature adjustment
   Maximum air conditioning
3. Air flow adjustment
   Automatic air conditioning
4. Interior air recirculation

5. Automatic Visibility programme
6. Rear screen demisting/de-icing
7. Direct access to the **Climate** application
8. Air distribution adjustment
9. Automatic air conditioning setting
10. Temperature synchronisation
11. Temperature pre-conditioning (depending on version)

This system works with the engine running but access to the ventilation and its controls remains possible with the ignition on.

Adjusting the temperature
The driver and front passenger can each choose their own temperature setting.
The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

► Turn the knob **1** or **2** of the central controls to increase (red) or decrease (blue) the value.

It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3°C in the settings for left and right.

Temperature synchronisation
The driver side temperature setting is applied to the passenger side.

► Press button **10** to activate/deactivate the function.

The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons.

Automatic air conditioning
This automatic mode ensures optimum management of the passenger compartment temperature, air flow and air distribution, based on the selected comfort level.

► Press knob **3** of the central controls to activate the air conditioning system's automatic mode.

The indicator lamp in the button lights up when the air conditioning system is operating automatically.
The intensity of the automatic air conditioning is modulated by choosing one of the following settings:

► **AUTO SOFT**: provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

► **AUTO NORMAL**: offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

► **AUTO FAST**: provides dynamic and efficient air distribution.

To change the AUTO mode, press button **9** successively.
To ensure passenger comfort in the rear seats, favour settings **AUTO NORMAL** and **AUTO FAST.**

In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Automatic air conditioning manual settings
It is possible to manually adjust one or more of these functions, while the system retains automatic control of the other functions:
– air flow.
– air distribution.
The indicator lamp in the **"AUTO"** button goes out if a setting is changed.

► Press knob **3** again to reactivate automatic air conditioning.

Adjusting the air flow

► Turn the knob **3** to increase of decrease air flow.

Switching off the air conditioning system
When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops.
"OFF" is displayed alongside the fan.

Adjusting the air distribution

► Press the buttons **8** to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.


Windscreen and side windows


Central and side air vents


Footwells

A symbol is activated to display the presence of blown air in the direction indicated.

It is possible to activate the "Central and side air vent" and "Footwells" or "Windscreen and side windows" and "Footwells" simultaneously, for uniform distribution throughout the passenger compartment.

Air conditioning on / off
The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It lowers the temperature in summer.
It increases the effectiveness of demisting in winter, above 3°C.

► Press knob **1** to switch the air conditioning on/off.

When the system is activated, the indicator lamp of the button comes on.

Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is deactivated.
To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air recirculation for a brief period. Then return to the intake of exterior air.
Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

Maximum air conditioning
This function automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, the air distribution towards the central and side air vents, the air flow to maximum and activates interior air recirculation.

► Press knob **2** to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/switching off).

Once the function is deactivated, the system returns to the previous settings.

Interior air recirculation
The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.
Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odours and fumes and allows the desired passenger compartment temperature to be achieved more rapidly.



► Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

This function is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Heated steering wheel

(Depending on country of sale) In cold weather, this function heats the circular part of the steering wheel.
It can be activated when the outside temperature is below 20°C.



► With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/going out).

The system is automatically deactivated every time the engine is switched off.

Heating and ventilation

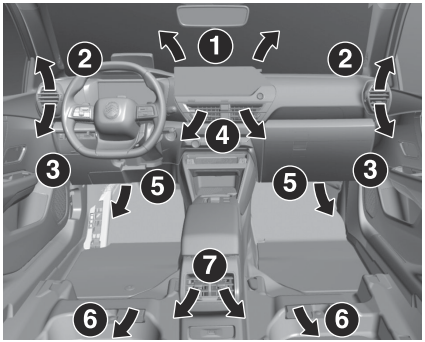
Air intake
The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the windscreen, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls



Depending on version, the controls are accessible in the touch screen or are grouped together on the centre console panel.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/de-icing vents
2. Front side window demisting/de-icing vents
3. Adjustable and closable side air vents
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents
5. Air outlets to the front footwells
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells
7. Adjustable and closable air vents

Advice

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing a large load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

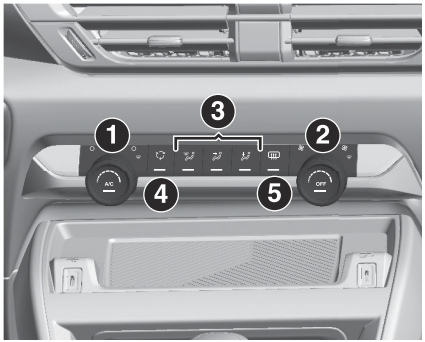
We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Its specific active additive helps protect against polluting gases and bad smells.

- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.

Stop & Start / e-Auto mode (where provided)
The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the corresponding system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment. For more information, refer to the corresponding section.

ECO driving mode
Selecting this mode reduces electrical energy consumption, but restricts the performance of the heating and air conditioning systems, although it does not deactivate them.

Manual air conditioning



1. Adjusting the temperature
   Air conditioning on/off
2. Adjusting the air flow
   System switch-off
3. Adjusting the air distribution
4. Interior air recirculation
5. Rear screen demisting/de-icing

The air conditioning system only operates with the engine running.

Adjusting the temperature

▶ Turn the knob **1** from blue (cold) to red (hot).

Air flow adjustment

▶ Turn the thumbwheel **2** to obtain a sufficient air flow to ensure your comfort.

If the air flow control is in the **minimum** position (system deactivated), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be controlled. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

Adjusting the air distribution


Windscreen and side windows


Central and side air vents


Footwells

▶ Press one of the buttons **3** to adjust the air distribution inside the passenger compartment.

The lighting of the button indicates that air is being blown in the specified direction. It is possible to activate the following buttons simultaneously:
– Central and side air vents + footwells.
– Windscreen and side windows + footwells.

Air conditioning on/off
The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It is used to:
– lower the temperature in summer,
– increase the effectiveness of demisting in winter, above 3°C.

▶ Press knob 1 to turn the air conditioning on/off.

When the system is activated, the indicator lamp comes on.

Switching the system off

▶ Press knob **2**; all the indicator lamps of the system go out.

This action deactivates all of the functions of the air conditioning system.
The temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

Temperature pre-conditioning

This function allows you to programme the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.
This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected.
Programming

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen
In the **Climate > OPTIONS** menu:
Select **Temperature conditioning.**


▶ Press **+** to add a programme.

▶ Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press **OK.**

▶ Press **ON** to activate this programme.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen


In the **Climate** touch screen application, select the **Preconditioning** tab.

▶ Press **+** to add a programme.

▶ Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press **OK.**

▶ Press **ON** to activate this programme.

The temperature pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is connected (20 minutes when it is not connected) and is maintained for 10 minutes after.

You can set multiple programmes. Each one is saved in the system.
To optimise the driving range, we recommend starting a programme while the vehicle is connected.

Programming can also be carried out from a smartphone using the **MyCitroën App** application.

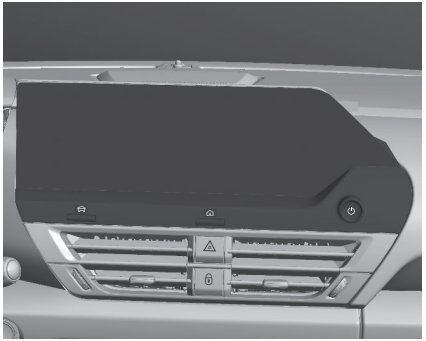
For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

The fan noise that occurs during temperature pre-conditioning is perfectly normal.

Operating conditions

- The function is only activated when the i**gnition is switched off** and the **vehicle locked.**
- When the vehicle is not connected, the function is only activated if the battery charge level is greater than 30%.
- When the vehicle is not connected and a recurring programme is active (e.g. from Monday to Friday), if two temperature pre-conditioning sequences are run without the vehicle being used, the programme will be deactivated.

Touch Screen and Info Display



This system gives access to the following elements:
– Permanent display of the time and outside temperature (a blue warning lamp appears if there is a risk of ice).
– Heating/air conditioning system controls (depending on version).
– Vehicle functions and equipment setting menus.
– Audio system and telephone controls and display of related information.
– Display of visual manoeuvring aid functions (visual parking sensor information, Park Assist, etc.).
– Internet services and display of related information.
– Navigation system controls and display of related information (depending on version).

For safety reasons, always stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention.
Some functions are not accessible while driving.

Recommendations
This screen is of the capacitive type.
– Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
– Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
– Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

Principles

Use this button to access the menus, then press the buttons that appear on the touch screen.

Use this button for direct access to the **Driving/ Vehicle** menu.

Some menus may display across two pages: press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the second page.

After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate/activate a function, select **"OFF"** or **"ON"**.


Configuring a function


Access to additional information on the function



Confirm


Return to the previous page or confirm


Audio system on/off Volume adjustment/mute

Menus

Press the touch screen with three fingers to show all of the menu buttons.

For more information about the menus, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.


Radio/Media


Climate
Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Manual air conditioning** or **Automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding section.


Navigation (depending on equipment)


Driving/Vehicle (depending on equipment)
Activation, deactivation and settings for certain functions.
The functions are organised in 2 tabs: **"Driving functions" and "Vehicle settings".**


Telephone


Applications
Access to certain configurable equipment.


Settings
Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Charging
This page allows you to programme deferred charging.
For more information on **Charging the traction battery (Electric)**, refer to the corresponding section.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

Main controls


On the 1st press: If in an application, it returns to the previous home page. If on a home page other than the first, it returns to the 1st home page. If already on the 1st home page, no action is taken.
On the 2nd press: If on a home page other than the 1st, it returns to the 1st home page. If already on the 1st home page, no action is taken.


Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids**

- Swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to access a list of quick settings (e.g.**Brightness, Diagnostics**).
- Depending on the pages displayed on the screen, with or without the context menu, scroll the text by swiping with your finger, as with a smartphone.


Show/Hide context menu


Return to the previous page

- To change the status of a function, press the description for the corresponding line (change confirmed by the slider moving to the right/left: function activated/ deactivated).


Access additional information on the function

Access to function parameters

Adding/Removing shortcuts

Sound control.
Turn the knob to change sound, short press the push inside the knob to mute/ restore the sound or long press the push for standby mode (mute sound, central screen off).

Applications

Press this button to access the applications wall.

From any page, press the touch screen with three or more fingers to display the applications wall.

To obtain information about the other applications not listed here, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematic systems.

ADAS
Activation/Deactivation and configuration of the driving aid functions.

Climate
Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Dual-zone automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding section.

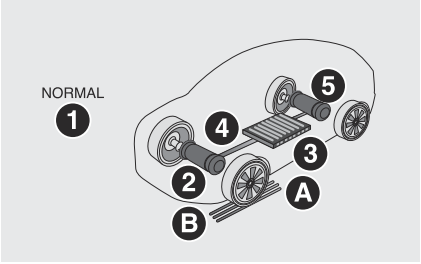
Settings
Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Activation/Deactivation and configuration of the exterior lighting, vehicle access and safety functions.

Energy
Access to the charging system features (energy flow, consumption statistics, deferred charging).

Energy application

Flow
The page displays a real-time representation of the electric drive train's operation.

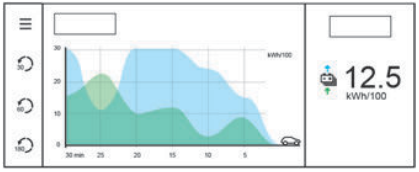


1. Active driving mode
2. Electric motor
3. Estimated traction battery charge level
4. Energy flows

The energy flows have a specific colour for each type of driving:

A. Blue: energy consumption
B. Green: energy recovery

Statistics
This page shows electrical energy consumption statistics.



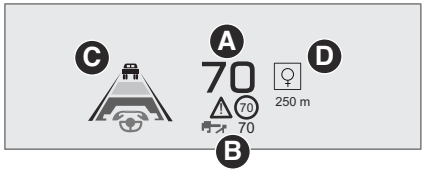
– Blue graph: energy consumed directly from the traction battery.
– Green graph: energy regenerated during deceleration and braking phases used to recharge the traction battery.
The average result for the current trip is stated in kWh/100 km.

Charging
This page allows you to programme deferred charging.
For more information on **Charging the traction battery (Electric)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Head-up display

System which projects various information onto a transparent blade placed in the driver's field of vision to avoid the driver having to take their eyes off the road.

Display in operation



Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:

- **A.** The speed of the vehicle.
- **B.** Cruise control/speed limiter information, indication of danger zones (with connected navigation) and, where fitted, information from the Road signs recognition function.
- **C.** If the vehicle is so equipped, inter-vehicle distance information, lane positioning assist information and automatic emergency braking alerts.
- **D.** If the vehicle is so equipped, navigation information.

For more information about **Navigation**, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Selector



1. Switching on
2. Switching off (long press)
3. Brightness adjustment
4. Display height adjustment

Activation/Deactivation

► With the engine running, press any button to activate the system and deploy the projection blade.

► Press and hold button **2** to deactivate the system and retract the projection blade.

The state of the system is saved when the engine is switched off and restored on restarting.

Adjusting the height

► With the engine running, adjust the display to the desired height using the buttons **4**:

► up to move the display up,

► down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment

► With the engine running, adjust the brightness of the information display using the buttons **3**:

► on the "sun" to increase the brightness,

► on the "moon" to decrease the brightness.

When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the projection blade (or in its recess) so as not to impede its movement and correct operation.

In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, etc.), the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference.
Some sunglasses may hamper reading of the information.
To clean the projection blade, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth, or detergent or solvent products, due to the risk of scratching the projection blade or damaging the nonreflective coating.

My shortcuts



With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen
From the left or right edge of the audio system's screen, swipe right or swipe left to display the shortcuts.
By default, it suggests the main applications: **Media, Navigation, Phone, Mirror Screen, Settings, Help...**
These shortcuts can be customised.
For more information on **Personalisation - My shortcuts**, refer to the corresponding section for the Audio equipment and telematics systems.

Customization

Press and hold the screen from one of the system's home pages.

Or

Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Customization"** tab.
Press the **"Displays"** field.
A page divided into 2 parts is displayed.
Press the HOME button at any time to leave this page.

Customizing the screen

Press the pencil in the **"Customize Touchscreen"** part.

A representation of the organisation of the different home page **(HOME)** Widgets is displayed.

A Widget is a reduced window of an application or service.

Adding a Widget

To add a Widget, press **"Widget"** on the left of the screen.

Or

Press one of these buttons on the screen.

Select the desired Widget.

Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Organising the Widgets on a home page (HOME)

To move a Widget, press and hold it, then drag it to the desired location.

Adding a page

To add a page, press **"Page"** on the left of the screen.

Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Deleting a Widget

To move a Widget to the bin, press and hold it, then drag it to the bin.

Customizing the instrument panel

Press the pencil in the **"Customize Driver Information"** part.

The modification of the organisation of the different Widget is displayed on the instrument panel in real time.

A Widget is a reduced window of an application or service.

Adding a Widget

To add a Widget, press **"Widget"** on the left of the screen.

Or

Press one of these buttons on the screen.

Select the desired Widget.

Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Deleting a Widget

To move a Widget to the bin, press and hold it, then drag it to the bin.

Personalising My shortcuts (depending on equipment)



From the left or right edge of the screen, swipe right or left to display the shortcuts.
A representation of six shortcuts appears.

The shortcuts are used to access an application (air conditioning page, radio page, etc.) or to perform an action (set the temperature to 21°, call a selected directory contact, etc.).

Briefly press a shortcut to be replaced, a panel is displayed with all eligible shortcuts. A notification also informs you of the next step to be applied.
Select the desired new shortcut. It will be duplicated in the My shortcuts page and will replace the originally selected one. A notification also informs you of this.

To exit this function at any time, press this button or press the HOME main button.

Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

The functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of the vehicle, and according to the country of sale.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Connecting the smartphone via Bluetooth, USB or Wi-Fi.
– Using the smartphone.
– Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (certain applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

Any intervention or modification on the vehicle's system is strictly forbidden
- Risk of serious burns or electric shock (short-circuit) that could lead to death (electrocution)! In the event of a problem, always contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle.
The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

The OSS (Open Source Software) source codes for the systems are available at the following link:
https://www.citroen.com/open-source

The system transmits and/or receives radio waves subject to the Directive 2014/53/EU.
The manufacturers of the mentioned system declare the conformity with the Directive 2014/53/EU.
The full text of the EU **declaration of conformity** for each system is available at the following address:
http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons on the steering wheel controls.
Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.
Use the **"HOME"** and **"Vehicle"** buttons below the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.
At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.
On pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, you can switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page or by swiping the pages to the left or right with your finger.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently on the main screen:

- Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Radio Media and Telephone menu status information.
- Privacy status information.
- Access to the touch screen and digital instrument panel settings.

Audio source selection (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB Memory stick.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.
The system is operational in temperatures between -40°C and +70°C.

Steering mounted controls



Voice control: smartphone voice commands.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



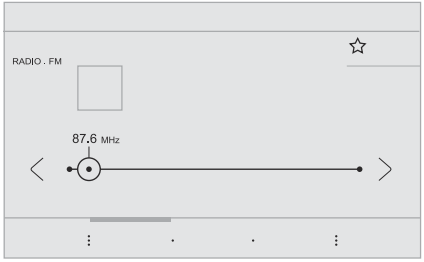
Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (up/down): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (up/down): previous/next track, move through a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access presets.

Accelerated navigation.

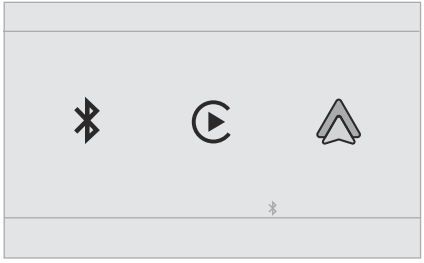
Menus
Radio Media





Select an audio source or radio station.

Telephone





Connect a mobile phone via Bluetooth®.

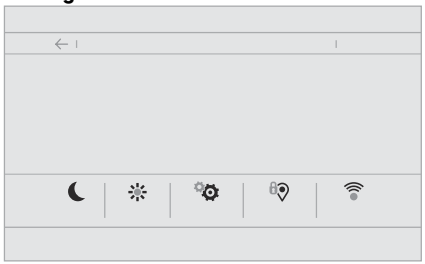
Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Applications



Access configurable equipment.

Settings



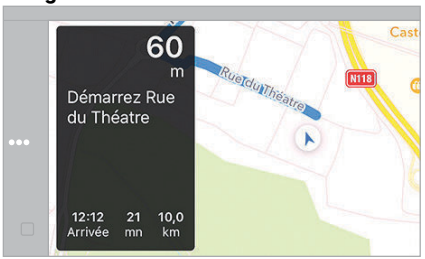
Configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.), the display (language, units, date, time, etc.), and some system functions.

Driving



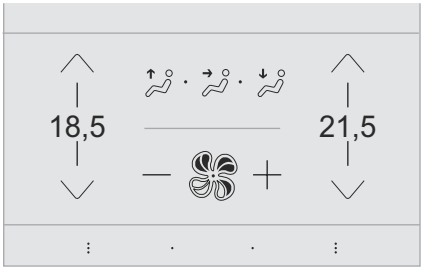
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Configure the navigation and select your destination via CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Radio
Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Press the frequency to enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.
This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Changing the waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Press **"Band"** to change waveband.



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Presetting a station
Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or Select a radio station or frequency.
Press **"Preset".**



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS
RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate **"RDS".**



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information
The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate **"News".**



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Playing TA messages
The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate **"TA".**



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Press **"Audio settings".**



Select the **"Tone", "Balance"** or **"Sound"** tab to configure the sound settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

In the **"Tone"** tab, the **Ambience, Bass, Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are
different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio
Terrestrial Digital Radio
Digital radio provides higher quality sound. The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Press **"Band"** to select **"DAB band".**



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up
"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate **"FM-DAB Follow-up".**



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume.
When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".
To minimise this time lag, storing radio stations in the "DAB" band is recommended.

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out when the digital signal becomes too weak.

Media
USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"SOURCES"** button.
Select the source.

BluetoothStreaming®
Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players
Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/ albums/genres/playlists/ audio books/ podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist.
To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice
The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone
Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telephone settings).
To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press Telephone to display the main page.



Press **"Connected Devices".**

The list of detected telephones is displayed.



Press this button to start searching for new devices.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Complete the pairing with the displayed code.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

– **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),

– **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),

– **"Mobile internet data".**



Select one or more profiles.



Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to access the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**



Press the "Details" button for a paired device.



Select one or more profiles.



Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to access the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**



Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

Or



Press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Parking the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press **"Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Or press and hold



Press the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press **"Contacts".**
Select the desired contact from the displayed list.



Press **"Call".**

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or



Press and hold



Press the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press **"Recent calls".**
Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Press "Ring volume" to display the volume bar.



Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Using CarPlay® or Android Auto
Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's CarPlay® or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone. The smartphone can be connected via USB cable or via a wireless connection.

Unlock the smartphone for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work.
As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-todate, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Manufacturer's website in your country.

USB sockets
Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with **CarPlay®** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

Wireless connection

Before using CarPlay® or Android Auto wirelessly, ensure the Wi-Fi regulatory restrictions of your geographic location are met, as indicated by a message on the touch screen.
If the 5 GHz Wi-Fi network frequency is not allowed in your location, select **2.4 GHz** at the first connection.
Check the Wi-Fi restrictions again when you travel to different locations and set the Wi-Fi frequency accordingly.
The regulations of the 5 GHz frequency are specific to each country. Refer to the regulation in force in your country.

When using CarPlay® with 5 GHz frequency activated, there may be interference with certain devices (tolls, parking...) resulting in a disconnection.
To prevent this from happening, it is recommended to disable the 5 GHz function.

Difficulties in connecting wirelessly your smartphone may happen, due to:
– Interference with other Wi-Fi networks.
– Interference with certain devices (tolls, parking) when using Android Auto.
– An unsuitable configuration of the smartphone.
In these cases, it is recommended to connect the smartphone with its original cable.

CarPlay® smartphone connection
The availability of the application depends on the country.

USB connection

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.
The "**CarPlay**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.


Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.


From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the main page.


Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

CarPlay® interface may appear automatically.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.


The CarPlay® navigation can be accessed at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Wireless connection
First activate the smartphone's Bluetooth® function.


From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the main page.

If the device has already been connected to the system via Bluetooth®, select the device settings from the list of known devices and choose CarPlay® as the wireless connection mode.
If the device has never been connected to the system before, it will have to be paired (refer to the corresponding section).
The system detects if the smartphone is compatible with CarPlay® and offers to connect to it following the pairing process.
Subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of the Bluetooth® on your device.


As soon as the connection is established, press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.


Press and hold this steering-mounted control button and say "Siri" to initiate the smartphone voice commands.

Android Auto smartphone connection
The availability of the application depends on the country.


On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

The first connection of Android Auto to the system should be made by USB cable.

USB connection



Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the main page.



Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"Android Auto"** function.



During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Wireless connection
First activate the smartphone's Bluetooth® function.



Connect a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the main page.

If the device has already been connected to the system via Bluetooth®, select the device settings from the list of known devices and choose Android Auto® as the wireless connection mode.
If the device has never been connected to the system before, it will have to be paired (refer to the corresponding section).
The system detects if the smartphone is compatible with Android Auto and offers to connect to it following the pairing process.
Subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of the Bluetooth® on your device.



As soon as the connection is established, press **"Android Auto"** to display the Android Auto interface.Connect a USB cable.



Press and hold this steering-mounted control button and say "OK Google" to initiate the smartphone voice commands.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Applications
Viewing photos
Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp and .png.



Press **Applications** to display the main page.



Press **"Photos".**



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages



Press **Applications** to display the main page.



Press "SMS".



Select the "SMS" tab.



SPress this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search and select a recipient.



Select the "Quick messages" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the bin alongside the selected message to delete it.



Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.



Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the bin to delete the message.

Settings
Adjusting the brightness



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **Brightness.**



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.



Press **"System configuration".**

Press the **"Units"** tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
Press the **"Factory settings"** tab to restore the initial settings.

Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the **"System info"** tab to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.
Press the **"Privacy"** tab,
or



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **"Privacy"** to activate or deactivate the private data mode.



Activate or deactivate:

– "No sharing (data, vehicle position)".
– "Only data sharing"
– "Data and vehicle position sharing"



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.



Press **"Screen configuration".**
Press "Brightness".



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **"Animation".**



Activate or deactivate: **"Automatic scrolling".**



Select **"Animated transitions".**



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language


Press **Settings** to display the main page.


Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.



Select **"Language"** to change the language.


Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time


Press **Settings** to display the main page.


Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.


Press **"Date and time".**

Select **"Time".**


Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.



Press **"OK"** to save the time.


Press this button to set the time zone.


Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).


Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).


Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date


Press **Settings** to display the main page.


Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.


Press **"Date and time".**

Select **"Date".**


Press this button to set the date.


Press the back arrow to save the date.


Select the display format for the date.


Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.

Wifi settings


Press **Settings** to display the main page.


Press **"Wifi"** to access network frequency setting.


Activate or deactivate the **5 GHz Wifi** function.

Android Auto uses the 5 GHz frequency.
CarPlay® uses the 2,4 and 5 GHz frequency.

When using CarPlay® with 5 GHz frequency activated, there may be interference with certain devices (tolls, parking...) resulting in a disconnection.
To prevent this from happening, it is recommended to disable the 5 GHz function.

Difficulties in connecting wirelessly your smartphone may happen, due to:
– Interference with other Wi-Fi networks.
– Interference with certain devices (tolls, parking) when using Android Auto.
– An unsuitable configuration of the smartphone.
In these cases, it is recommended to connect the smartphone with its original cable.

The regulations of the 5 GHz frequency are specific to each country. Refer to the regulation in force in your country.

Frequently asked questions
The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).
The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function in the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.
This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations.
The name of the radio station changes.
The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).
The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Media
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).
Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

Some characters in information about the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.
The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.

► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.

Playback of streaming files does not start.
The connected device does not automatically launch playback.

► Start playback from the device.

Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.
The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.
The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the device may not be visible.

► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.

► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".

The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.

► Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).

Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.

► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.

Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay are not available in all countries.

► Check the Google Android Auto or Apple website to see which countries are supported.

The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.
The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.

► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.

Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.

► Reduce ambient noise (close windows, turn down ventilation, slow down, etc.).

The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.
Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.

► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings
When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.
When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.
Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.

When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.
When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.
Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.
To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. Adjust the sound functions to the middle position.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.
When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.
The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

► Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.

3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

Control panel



1.  Displays the settings application.
2.  Displays the navigation application.
3.  Displays the TEL application.

4.  Displays the **Application Drawer** that allows to open the application wall with more apps.
5.  Displays the HELP application (handbook, tutorials ...).
6.  Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto app in Info Display.
7.  Displays **ADAS** page application.
8.  Displays **climate** page.
9.  Displays **Date & Time** settings menu.
10.  Displays the **energy** application.
11.  Launch the voice recognition.
12.  Displays the **radio / media** application.
13.  Displays the connectivity menu.

Pairing a mobile device

1. Enable Bluetooth on the mobile device and ensure it is visible for other devices.
2. Press and scan for devices.

   A search for all Bluetooth devices in the near environment is performed.
3. Select the mobile device you wish to pair from the displayed list.
4. Follow the instructions on the mobile device.
5. Activate the functions you want the paired device to perform and confirm your settings. You can change these Bluetooth profile settings at any time, see below.
   The Infotainment system and the device are paired.

Once the mobile device is successfully paired, it will be connected automatically and shown as connected.
To delete a device, go to the Connectivity menu, then select Delete in the settings.

Smartphone stations

The Smartphone Station is operated via the **MyCitroën App** on an external device, such as a mobile phone, that is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.
The following menus can be selected:

- Library: browse playlists, artists, albums, tracks and directories.
- Phone: make and receive phone calls.
- Web radio: select from various web radio stations.
- Tuner radio: manually search for radio stations.
- Settings: personalize system settings.

Installation of the external device
Pull the slide holder to the right, insert the mobile device into the support and fix it with the slide holder.

Pairing a mobile device
Automatic pairing
Push the Bluetooth button of the smartphone station to enable bluetooth visibility.
Open the Bluetooth menu on the mobile device and activate the scan function.
The system will automatically search for new devices.

The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.
For more information on **Energy economy mode** , refer to the "Practical information" section.

The AM radio selection mode is not available on electric vehicles.

Warning Navigation is a driving aid. It cannot replace the driver. All guidance instructions should be carefully checked by the user.
By using the navigation, you accept the following terms and conditions: https://www.tomtom.com/en_gb/legal/ eula-automotive/?388448

General information

First steps



The system starts when the ignition is switched on.

Short press, ignition off: system on/off.
Short press, ignition on: mute/restore sound.
Long press, ignition on: start standby mode (mute sound, screens and clock display off).
Rotation: volume adjustment.

Information

This system gives access to the following elements:
– Audio equipment and telephone controls with display of associated information.
– Connected services and display of associated information.
– Navigation system controls and display of associated information (depending on equipment).
– Voice recognition (depending on equipment).
– Time and outside temperature.
– Heating/air conditioning system controls and reminders of settings.
– Settings for driving aid functions, comfort and safety functions, audio equipment and digital instrument panel.
– Settings for functions specific to electric vehicles.
– Display of visual manoeuvring aid functions.
– Interactive handbook.
– Video tutorials (e.g. screen management, driving aids, voice recognition).

Upper banner

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:
– Outside temperature from the vehicle's sensors (associated with a blue symbol if there is a risk of ice).
– Temperature setting reminder for the air conditioning on the driver's and passenger sides.
– Charge level of the connected smartphone.
– System connection status (Bluetooth®, Wi-Fi, mobile telephone network).
– Time.
– Quick access to the Mirror Screen® functions (associated with a connected smartphone).

Swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to access the notifications centre and display a list of quick settings :Guest, Privacy Settings, Brightness, My Devices, night mode, etc.

Principles



Use this button (HOME) to display the most recent home page used; a second press displays the first home page, then press the virtual buttons displayed on the touch screen.



Scroll through the home pages by sliding your finger along the screen to the right or to the left.

Principle of movement in the system

Depending on the pages displayed on the screen, scroll through the text or the menu (on the left side of the screen) by sliding your finger, as with a smartphone.

Touch buttons



Display/hide the context menu.



Return to the previous page.

► To change the status of a function, press the description for the corresponding line (change confirmed by the slider moving to the right/left: function activated/deactivated).



Access to additional information about the function.



Access to a function's settings.



Add/delete shortcuts.

Configuring profiles



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Profile" tab.**
The screen displays a "Guest" profile built into the system and allows you to create and personalise several new profiles with or without an associated mobile device.



The **"Guest"** profile has a default display with the possibility of adding to it and/or returning it to its initial

configuration. This profile is built into the system and cannot be deleted.



Each profile created can be associated with a mobile device of your choice connected via Bluetooth®; the

Bluetooth® function of the mobile device must first be activated. This association allows the system to detect your presence in the vehicle when it starts and to propose the activation of your personalised profile.

If a profile is not connected to the mobile device, the last profile used will be highlighted.



Select **"Create Profile"**, then follow the procedure.

The advantage of creating a new profile is to personalise:
– Language, units, Privacy Settings.
– Screen configuration, appearance, i-Toggles (depending on equipment).
– Audio settings, favourite radio stations.
– Lighting, interior ambience (refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section).
– Navigation history, favourite points of interest (POIs), navigation settings.
– Some driving aids and the list of favourites.



To delete a profile, select it from the list of profiles then press the bin.

Privacy Settings
The "Privacy Settings" management is associated with each profile. This function is used with: a "Guest" profile configured by default in "Private Mode",
or
a profile to be created in the system, with or without connection to a mobile device.
For each profile (even "Guest"), the last privacy mode saved value will be restored.



"Sharing Data and Location"
This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed

for each valid available connected service.

The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.



"Sharing Data"
This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed

for each valid available connected service, with the exception of vehicle location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).

Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of commercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).



"Private Mode"
This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle.

Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of commercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).

Professional purposes
If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g. corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

To change mode, swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to display all of the quick settings.



Press this button and select the chosen mode. The mode is highlighted.

OR



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.



Select **"Privacy Settings".**



Choose the mode.

Internet portal
During the first use, upon acquisition of the vehicle, the user is invited to select the country of residence for the use of the Internet portal. If the country is not selected, the notification is stored in the notification centre and disappears once the country is selected. Slide a finger on the touch screen from top to bottom to display all the notifications.

The selection of a country is necessary to use the available internet applications.



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connected Services".**



Choose the country.



The first time you use it, via a connected mobile device, the system links to your profile. The connected mobile device serves as an access key to saved personal information.

First activate the mobile device's Bluetooth® function.

Select the desired application, authentication will be requested if necessary. This authentication will be saved for future uses via the mobile device connected to the current profile.

An authentication will be requested at each use if the mobile device is not connected to the current profile or if the Guest profile is used.



With the use of the "Guest" profile, an identification will be requested for each use.

Updating the system

Managing devices remotely and remote updating of software and firmware.

Being an integral part of the service used to provide connected services contract(s), the required management of devices as well as the required updating of the software and firmware associated with the aforementioned connected service will be carried out remotely, in particular using "Over the Air" technology.

To do this, a secure connection via radio network is established between the vehicle and the Manufacturer's device management server each time the ignition is switched on, when a mobile telephone network is available.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the connection configuration must be set to "Connected vehicle" to enable to the connection to the radio network.

Irrespective of a valid subscription to a connected service, the remote management of devices relating to or connected with the security of devices, and the updating of software and firmware, will be carried out when necessary in order to comply with a legal requirement applicable to the Manufacturer (e.g. the applicable law in terms of product liability, the regulations governing e-call) or when necessary to protect the respective vital interests of the vehicle's users and passengers.

The establishment of a secure connection via radio network and the corresponding remote updates are not affected by the privacy settings and are intended to be carried out after being initialised by the user in response to a related notification.

The system can notify the receipt of an update when it is connected to an exterior Wi-Fi network or a mobile telephone network.

Large updates are downloaded only via the Wi-Fi network.

The availability of an update is notified on the screen at the end of the journey with an option of immediate installation or postponement of installation.

The installation time is variable and can take several minutes with a maximum of about 30 minutes. A notification will give an estimate of the duration and a description of the update.

Update information is available through the "Settings" application.



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Updates"** tab.



This button allows you to change the authorisation for automatic downloading of updates via an exterior Wi-Fi network.

For safety reasons and because it requires sustained attention on the part of the driver, the installation must be carried out with the ignition on but without starting the engine.

The installation cannot be carried out in the following cases:

- engine running.
- emergency call in progress.
- insufficient battery level.
- when charging for electric vehicles.

If an update has failed or has expired, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The Manufacturer does not charge for the use of this service.
However, the use of Wi-Fi and/or mobile telephone networks by your smartphone may incur extra charges if you exceed the data allowance included in your contract. Any associated costs will be billed to you by your mobile telephone operator.

Steering-wheel Controls



Voice control:
Short press, system voice commands (depending on equipment).

Long press, voice commands of the smartphone connected using Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen® (Apple®CarPlay®/Android Auto) via the system.



Voice control:
Short press, system voice commands (depending on equipment).



Increase volume.Decrease volume.

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment) or by long pressing the volume decrease button.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Incoming call (short press): accept the call.
Call in progress (short press): hang up.
Incoming call (long press): refuse the incoming call.
Out of call (short press): access the call log of the telephone connected via Bluetooth®.
Mirror Screen® connected (short press): access the projected view of the telephone application of your Mirror Screen® equipment.



Radio: automatic search for the previous/ next station (in the list of radio stations sorted by name or by frequencies).
Media: previous/next track, movement in the lists.
Phone: browse the telephone's call log.
Short press: validate a selection. Out of selection, display the favourite lists.

Applications



From the home page, press this button to access the applications wall.

From any page, press the touch screen with three or more fingers to display the applications wall.



Help

Access the handbook and watch tutorials.



Media

Select an audio source or radio station.



Mirror Screen®

Smartphone connected with Mirror Screen®: access to the projected view of Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto.
Smartphone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a smartphone.



Navigation

(depending on equipment) Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



Voice commands

(depending on equipment) Use the system or smartphone voice recognition via the system.



Phone

Telephone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a telephone.
Telephone connected: access the call log, contacts and telephone settings.
Two connected telephones: access the contents of the priority telephone with the possibility of changing the priority of the telephone.



Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Voice Commands

First steps
(depending on equipment)
The voice recognition service offers a choice of 17 languages minimum (French, German, English (UK), English (US), Arabic, Brazilian, Chinese, Spanish, Hebrew, Italian, Japanese, Dutch, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Swedish, Turkish) available with the cellular network and in line with the language chosen and previously configured in the system.
The system supports two languages for cases where the area in which the vehicle is travelling is not covered by the cellular network.
These languages, referred to as on-board languages, are downloaded into the system.
If the chosen language has not been downloaded, a message on the screen appears as soon as the cellular network is not connected for the first time and offers to download it.
To use this new language in all areas, download it beforehand (ignition on without starting the engine) via the Wi-Fi network.
Apply the download procedure displayed on the screen.
Downloading this new language removes the least used on-board language.

Information - Using the system

When voice commands are activated, say your command after the audible signal.

For commands in several stages, interaction takes place with the system to complete the initial request.
Some commands self-validate after 7 seconds.

If the system has not taken your command into account, it will indicate this by a voice message and an on-screen display.

Opening voice recognition.

Voice commands can be used on any screen page, provided there are no other sources which take priority in use (reverse, emergency or assistance call, telephone call, other smartphone voice recognition already launched).
Choice of opening voice recognition:

▶ Say “Hello Citroën”.

or

▶ Press the button located on the steering wheel.

or

▶ Press the touch screen button.

To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:
– Use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
– After opening voice recognition with the steering wheel-mounted button or the button on the touch screen, always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before talking.
No "beep" sounds when voice recognition is opened using "Hello Citroën".
– For optimal operation, it is recommended that you close the windows and the sunroof (depending on equipment) to avoid any external interference, and switch the ventilation off.
– Before speaking the voice commands, ask the other passengers not to speak.

Voice command example for air conditioning:
"raise the fan speed"
"Turn on air conditioning"
"i'm too hot"

Voice command example for radio and media:

"I want to listen to michael jackson"
"switch to radio"
"tune to 88.5"

Media voice commands are only available with an USB connection.

Voice command example for navigation:

"navigate home"
"Navigate me to gabrielle's house"
"search for public parking nearby"

Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

Voice command example for telephone:

"Call Matthew's mobile"
"call 0113 345 9869"
"Call jonathan"

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth®, a pop-up window appears: "**Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®**", and the voice session will be closed.

Voice command example for the weather:

"do i need a raincoat"

"how is the weather tonight"

"what is today's humidity level"

Navigation

Navigation home screen (depending on equipment)
Access to additional videos

Access to additional videos

https://www.tomtom.com/

https://www.tomtom.com/ PSAGroup-Connected-Nav

Press the **"Navigation"** application to display the navigation home screen.

Press **"Search"** to enter an address or a name.

Press this button to display the main menu for the various options.

Press this button to display the 3D/2D mode.

Select **"Sound activated"** **"Alerts only"** and **"Silent"** with successive presses on this button.

Press the "plus"/"minus" buttons to zoom in/out, or use two fingers on the screen.

Main menu

Press the **"Navigation"** application to display the navigation home screen.

Press this button to display the main menu for the various options.

Select **"Search"** to enter an address, name or some points of interest.

Select **"Go home"** using an address previously saved in **"Add home".**

Select **"Go to work"** using an address previously saved in **"My places".**

Select **"Recent destinations"** to display the latest destinations searched.

Select **"Current trip"** to open another menu and perform various actions for the current planned route.

Select **"My places"** for quick access to saved places as well as favourite destinations.

Select **"My trips"** to display your favourite routes.

Select **"Parking"** to display the various parking options in the area.

Select **"Service station"** to display the different service stations on the current route or near the current location.

Select **"TomTom service"** to check the network status.

Select **"Settings"** to enter the vehicle type and to personalise the display, voice instructions, map options, trip planning, sounds and alerts, and system information.

Select this button to display details on software versions as well as legal information.

Details of the Open Source software libraries used and their licence URLs.

Regular connection to a secure Wi-Fi access point automatically updates the installed mapping globally.
The mapping is also updated using a cellular network, depending on version, country of sale, the vehicle's level of equipment, as well as the subscription to connected services and options.
However, using your smartphone's Wi-Fi and/or cellular networks may incur additional charges if you exceed your data plan.
These charges, if any, will be passed on to your telephone operator's bill.

Connectivity

Connecting a wired device by USB
The USB connection of a mobile device allows it to be recharged. It makes its authorised

media content available to the system (Media content of iPod® type).



Only one USB socket will allow a Mirror Screen connection (Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto) for the compatible connected mobile devices and to use some of the device's applications on the touch screen.
For more information on the USB socket compatible with the Mirror Screen® function, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort - Fittings" section.
The mobile device is in charging mode when connected with the USB cable.

It is recommended that you use your device's original USB cables, preferably with a short cable to ensure optimum performance.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Bluetooth® connection
Connecting a mobile device to the vehicle's system via Bluetooth® provides access to its contents and its "Media" streaming. It also enables the Phone function to be activated.
The connection can be initiated either from the mobile device's Bluetooth® menu or from the vehicle's system, which requires opening the "My Devices" menu for the first connection.

In some cases, you will need to unlock your device and check the authorisation to synchronise contacts and recent calls.
Some features may not be supported by your device.
For information on the partial or full compatibility of device models or smartphones, please connect to the Brand's national website.

Pairing procedure from a device



From the Bluetooth® menu on your mobile device, select the system's name from the list of detected devices.

In order to make your system's Bluetooth® visible, first open the "**My Devices**" menu on the system.

Continue the first connection procedure proposed by the system and on the device.
For example: validating pairing codes.

Pairing procedure from the system



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.



Select **"My Devices".**



Select the name of the mobile device that you want to connect, from:
– The list of known devices (if the device has already been connected to the system).
or
– The list of detected devices (if the device has never been connected to the system or previously deleted from the system).

A mobile device already connected to the system will be able to reconnect automatically when the vehicle is started, once the user profile has been selected.
Automatic reconnection is put on hold as soon as the "My Devices" menu is opened. This is to allow the system to make its Bluetooth® visible for the connection of a new device.
The system is disconnected when the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off.

Automatic reconnection
The system allows automatic reconnection of devices already connected and detected when a user profile is selected.
The priority reconnected devices are those which have been linked to the selected user profile or, failing this, the last connected devices.

Wi-Fi connection
The system has an external Wi-Fi connection mode for performing system updates.



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.



Select **"Wi-Fi".**



Activate/Deactivate **"Wi-Fi".**

The system starts a search for nearby Wi-Fi networks. This may take a few seconds.
Select the Wi-Fi network to connect to and enter its password.

To protect your system, only networks with a sufficient level of security are allowed to connect. WPA2 encryption level, equivalent to a domestic level, is required.

Any network already connected to the system will reconnect automatically as soon as it is detected by the system and after having previously activated the Wi-Fi function.

The Wi-Fi connection of the system to a device already connected using a Mirror Screen® wireless connection is not possible.
In this case, favour a Mirror Screen® connection using the USB socket.

Device management

For each device already connected to the system using a wireless connection (Bluetooth® or wireless Mirror Screen® connection), it is possible to determine a preferred connection mode (depending on the functions the device can support). It is therefore possible to determine whether the device should be connected using a wireless Bluetooth® connection or a wireless Mirror Screen® connection each time the system is started once the profile is chosen.



Press the **"Settings"** application.
In the list, select the **"Connectivity".**



Select **"My Devices"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press this button to manage the connection of a device.

Choose a connection type then confirm this choice by pressing “**APPLY".**

Deleting a device



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity".**



Select **"My Devices"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press this button.
Press **"DELETE".**
Confirm by pressing **“YES”.**

Some devices that have just been deleted from the system request a connection, refuse this request.

Screen Mirroring

When a smartphone is connected using Mirror Screen®, the vehicle's location and some vehicle data is sent to the smartphone (e.g. brand, left-hand or right-hand drive, day/ night mode, physical speed).

Apple®CarPlay® smartphone connection
Connecting just one Apple®CarPlay® smartphonecan be carried out either by USB cable or using a wireless connection.

First activate the Siri® function on your Apple® smartphone.
If the device fails to connect, refer to the Apple website to check that the device is compatible with this function.
If the problem persists, delete all saved connections on the smartphone and on the system before attempting a new connection.

The cable connection requires that you deactivate the CarPlay function in the **Settings, Bluetooth** menu of your smartphone.
In the **Bluetooth** menu, click on the "i" next to the relevant vehicle and deactivate CarPlay.



Connect the smartphone to the system using the USB socket compatible with Mirror Screen.

Apple®CarPlay® is automatically launched a few seconds after the USB connection has been established. In some cases, it may be necessary to unlock your device.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

The cable connection allows you to avoid disconnections, especially when passing through toll booths.

Only one USB socket enables the Mirror Screen® connection (Apple®CarPlay®); refer to the "Ease of use and comfort - Fittings" section.
It is recommended that you use the device's original USB cables, preferably with a short cable to ensure optimum performance.

The wireless connection of an Apple®CarPlay® smartphone can be initiated from the **"My Devices"** menu.
First activate the smartphone's CarPlay® function.
In the **Bluetooth** menu, click on the "i" next to the relevant vehicle and activate CarPlay.



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity".**



Select **"My Devices"** to display the device to be connected to Apple®CarPlay®.

If the device has already been connected to the system via Bluetooth®, select the device settings from the list of known devices and choose Apple®CarPlay® as the wireless connection mode.
If the device has never been connected to the system before, it will have to be paired (refer to the "Bluetooth® connection" section).

The system detects if the smartphone is compatible with Apple®CarPlay® and offers to connect to it following the pairing process.
Subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of the Bluetooth® on your device.



As soon as the connection is established, press this button to display the **"Apple®CarPlay®"** interface.



To initiate the smartphone voice commands, press and hold the steeringmounted control button.

Android Auto smartphone connection
Connecting just one Android Auto smartphone can be carried out either by USB cable or using a wireless connection.

First install the "**Android Auto**" application via "Play Store" on your smartphone.
The "**Android Auto**" function requires a compatible smartphone.
If the device fails to connect, refer to the Android Auto website to check that the device is compatible with this function.
If the problem persists, delete all saved connections on the smartphone and on the system before attempting a new connection.
To ensure an optimum wireless connection, we recommend avoiding placing your smartphone too close to other Wi-Fi networks to which it can connect automatically.

The cable connection requires that you deactivate the Android Auto wireless function, in the **Settings** menu of the **"Android Auto"** application of your smartphone.



Connect the smartphone to the system using the USB socket compatible with Mirror Screen®.

Android Auto is automatically launched a few seconds after the USB connection has been established. A validation procedure on the smartphone has to be followed for the first connection, with the vehicle stationary.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.
The cable connection allows you to avoid disconnections, especially when passing through toll booths.

Only one USB socket enables the Mirror Screen® connection (Android Auto); refer to the "Ease of use and comfort - Fittings" section.
It is recommended that you use the device's original USB cables, preferably with a short cable to ensure optimum performance.

The wireless connection of an Android Auto smartphone can be initiated from the **"My Devices"** menu.
First activate the smartphone's Android Auto® wireless function, in the **Settings** menu of the **"Android Auto"** application of your smartphone.



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity".**



Select **"My Devices"** to display the device to be connected to Android Auto.

If the device has never been connected to the system before, it will have to be paired (refer to the "Bluetooth® connection" section).
The system detects if the smartphone is compatible with Android Auto and offers to connect to it following the pairing process.
If the device has already been connected to the system via Bluetooth®, select the device settings from the list of known devices and choose Android Auto as the wireless connection mode.
The subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of Bluetooth® on your device.



As soon as the connection is established, press this button to display the **"Android Auto"** interface.



To initiate the smartphone voice commands, press and hold the steeringmounted control button.

Media

Changing source



Press the **"Media"** application.



Press this button to change source (radio, audio streaming via a USB socket, Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen®).

Selecting a radio station



Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Player"** tab.



Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press this button.



Enter the frequency values using the virtual keypad.



Press this button to confirm.

A list of stations is available by pressing the **"Stations"** tab.



Press **"Mute"** to activate/ deactivate the sound.

Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a charger with USB socket connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any malfunction of the system.

Storing a radio station

Select a station.



Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Player"** tab.



Press the **"Radio Favorites"** button.



Storing takes place via a short or long press on one of these buttons, or a long press on an existing favourite radio station, which will be replaced.



Press this button to return to the previous page.

Automatic search for radio stations

Via the **"Media"** application.



Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Stations"** tab.
The search is carried out automatically.

Activating radio station tracking
The system changes frequency automatically to obtain better reception.


Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Settings"** tab.


Activate "**Radio Station Tracking".**

The lighting of the slider confirms that the function is activated.

Changing the waveband


Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Player"** tab.


Press this button to change the waveband (FM - AM - DAB) according to the country of sale.

Activating traffic announcements
This function gives priority to listening to **Traffic announcements** alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message.
While traffic information is being broadcast, the current radio station is automatically interrupted so that the message can be heard. Normal radio listening resumes as soon as the message is finished.


Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Settings"** tab.


Activate **"Traffic Announcement (TA)".**

The lighting of the slider confirms that the function is activated.

Audio streaming
The streaming function allows you to listen to the audio stream coming from the smartphone(s) connected via Bluetooth®, USB (iPod® type) or Mirror Screen®.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the system.
If playback does not start, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

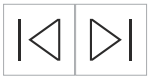
Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Playing a track


Press the **"Media"** application.


If several devices are connected, press this button to select one.

Once the device is connected, browsing through the files is possible by pressing the **"Playlist"** or **"Library"** button.


Short press: go to the previous/ next track.
Long press: fast-forward/rewind in a track.


Repeat the current title or the list of selected titles.


Random track playback.


Sound deactivation/ reactivation.

Configuring audio and radio settings
Audio settings can be accessed in 2 different ways.
Via the **Media** application


Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Settings"** tab.
Or Via the **Settings** application


Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Audio and Radio"** tab.
It is possible to configure:
– Sound Settings.
– Radio Settings.
– Volume Settings.

Information and advice
The system supports USB Mass Storage devices or Apple® devices via the USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
The system will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg, .mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
".wma" files must be of the WMA 9 standard.
The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Phone

Receiving a call
An incoming call is announced by a ring and a display overlaid on the screen.
Accepting the call:


briefly press the telephone button on the steering-mounted controls to accept an incoming call.

Or


Press this touch screen button.

Ending the call:



press and hold...


the telephone button on the steeringmounted controls to refuse the call.

Or


Press this touch screen button.


Press this button on the touch screen to send an automatic message indicating that you are driving.

Making a call

Using the telephone is strongly discouraged while driving.
Park the vehicle.

Making a call using the numeric keypad


Press the **"Phone"** application.
In the list, select the **"Keypad"** tab then dial the number.


Press this button to make the call.

Making a call using the list of recent calls


Press the **"Phone"** application.

In the list, select the **"Calls"** tab.
Or
Briefly press...


the telephone button on the steeringmounted controls.

Select and call one of the most recent numbers called in the list.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Calling a contact


Press the **"Phone"** application.
In the list, select the **"Contacts"** tab.

Select the desired contact in the displayed list.


Call the contact by selecting one of the contact's phone numbers.

Organising the contact list


Press the **"Phone"** application.

In the list, select the **"Settings"** tab to display the telephone-related settings.


Choose to list the contacts starting with their first or last name.

Connecting two phones

The system allows two phones to be connected simultaneously:
– 2 via Bluetooth® connection.
or
– 1 via Bluetooth® connection and 1 via Mirror Screen® connection.
Display and content priority is given to the last phone used.

To change the priority of the phone:


Press the **"Phone"** application.


Press this button to change the priority of the phone.

Settings

Configuring the screen display
Press the **"Settings"** application.
In the list, select the **"Customization"** tab.
It is possible to configure:
– the screen colours. Refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.
– the sound ambience.
– the visual welcome and goodbye animations.
– the screen transition animations.

Managing the system connectivity


Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.
It is possible to manage:
– The Bluetooth® connection.
– The Mirror Screen® smartphone connections (Apple®CarPlay®/Android Auto).
– The Wi-Fi connection.
– The privacy mode.

Configuring the system


Press the **"Settings"** application.
In the list, select the **"System"** tab.

It is possible to configure:
– the language.
– the date & time.
– the unit of distance and consumption (kWh/100 miles - miles, mi/kWh - miles, km/kWh - km).
– the temperature unit (Fahrenheit, Celsius).
It is also possible to reset the system configuration.

Selecting the language


Select **"Language"** to change the language.


Press the desired language.


Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Setting the date and time
Select **"Date and Time"** to modify the date and time.


"Automatic Date and Time" is activated by default, so that the setting is made automatically according to your geolocation.

To adjust manually, deactivate **"Automatic Date and Time".**
Press the **"Select Time Zone"** field then define a time zone.


Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.
Press the **"Time Settings"** line then set the time.



Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Press the **"Date"** line then set the date.



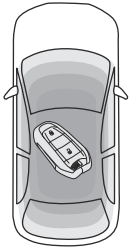
Press **"OK"** to confirm.


Select the Time Format (12h/24h).


Select the Date Format.

The system does not automatically change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Starting Procedure

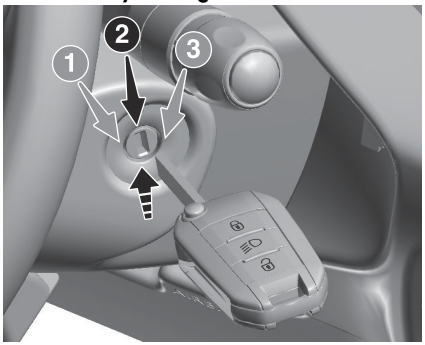




Locking of the steering column
In the event of a battery malfunction, the steering column remains locked. Do not try to start the vehicle by pushing it and do not tow it.

STARTING/SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Key ignition switch
Petrol and Hybrid engines



It has 3 positions:
– 1. Stop: inserting and removing the key, steering column locked.
– 2. Ignition: steering column unlocked, ignition on, engine running.
– 3. Starting.

Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control. This would weigh down on its shaft in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Ignition on position
It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or the charging of accessories. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

Starting the engine
With the parking brake applied:

- With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **N** or **P** then depress the brake pedal.
- Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.
- Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

In certain cases, you may need to apply significant force to move the steering wheel (e.g. wheels turned to full lock).

- With a **petrol engine**, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine has started, release the key and allow it to return to position **2.**

Petrol engines
After a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

Hybrid engines
The vehicle always starts with the petrol engine to ensure the efficiency of the catalytic converter and the availability of the brake assist.
After a few moments, the petrol engine may stop if the operating conditions allow (state of charge of the traction battery, external temperature, torque demand, selected driving mode).

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after a few attempts, do not keep trying - risk of damaging the starter motor and the engine! Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Switching off the engine

- ▶ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ▶ With the engine at idle, turn the key to position **1.**
- ▶ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ▶ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

Never switch off the ignition before the complete immobilisation of the vehicle.
With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.
When leaving the vehicle, keep the key in your possession and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode
After the engine has stopped (position **1. Stop**), for a maximum combined duration of 30 minutes, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, courtesy lamps or dipped beam headlamps.

For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

Key left in
When the driver's door is opened, a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, if the key has been left in the ignition switch in position **1**.
If the key has been left in the ignition switch in position **2**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1**, then back to position **2**.

Starting/switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Start

The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment.
The electronic key is also detected in the boot.
If the electronic key is not detected, a message is displayed.
Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or switched off.
If there is still a problem, refer to the "**Key not detected - Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off**" section.

Starting

- ▶ With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode P or N and press the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press the **"START/STOP"** button while maintaining pressure on the brake pedal until the engine starts.

In all circumstances, if one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed. In some circumstances, a message indicates that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the **"START/STOP"** button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

Petrol engines
After a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

Hybrid engines
The vehicle always starts with the petrol engine to ensure the efficiency of the catalytic converter and the availability of the brake assist.
After a few moments, the petrol engine may stop if the operating conditions allow (state of charge of the traction battery, external temperature, torque demand, selected driving mode).

If the engine stalls, release the clutch pedal and fully depress it again, the engine will restart automatically.

Switching off

- ► Immobilise the vehicle using the parking brake.
- ► With an **automatic gearbox**, ideally select mode **P** or **N**.
- ► Press the **"START/STOP"** button.

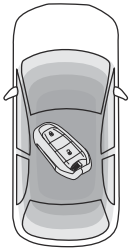
In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel to lock the steering column. On certain versions with an automatic gearbox, the steering column does not lock, but the gearbox locks in mode **P.**

If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

Switching on the ignition without starting the engine



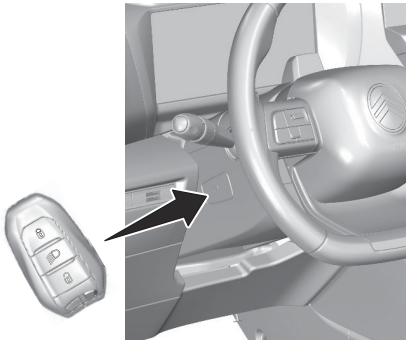


With the electronic key in the passenger compartment, pressing the **"START/STOP"** button, **without depressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on without starting the engine.

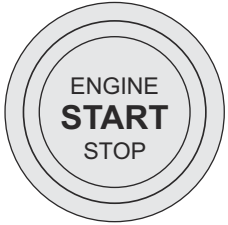
- ► Press this button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

Key not detected

Back-up starting



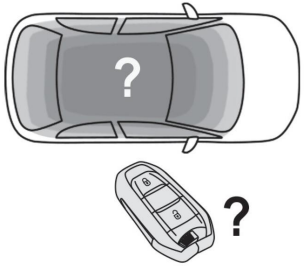
- ► Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.
- ► With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, select mode P, then depress the brake pedal.



- ► Press the "START/STOP" button.

The engine starts.

Back-up swith-off



If the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

► To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "START/STOP" button for approximately 5 seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Emergency switch-off
In case of emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

► Press the **"START/STOP"** button for about 5 seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Electric motor
Starting/Switching off the electric motor
Starting
The drive selector must be in mode **P**.

► If using a remote control key, depress the brake pedal and turn the key until it reaches position 3 (Start).

► If using Keyless Entry and Start, depress the brake pedal and briefly press the **"START/STOP"** button.

► Keep your foot on the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator lamp comes on and an audible signal is emitted, indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive.

► With your foot on the brake, select mode **D** or **R**.

► Release the brake pedal, then accelerate.

On starting, the instrument panel lights up and the power indicator cursor moves to the "neutral" position. The steering column automatically unlocks (you may hear a sound and feel the steering wheel move).

Switching off

► If using a remote control key, turn the key fully to position **1 (Stop).**

► If using Keyless Entry and Start, press the **"START/STOP"** button.

Before exiting the vehicle, check that:
– The drive selector is in mode **P.**
– The **READY** indicator lamp is off.

The drive selector moves automatically to mode **P** when the motor is switched off or when the driver's door is opened.

If the driver's door is opened while the required conditions for stopping are not satisfied, an audible signal is emitted, accompanied by the display of a warning message.

For the procedures for switching on the ignition without starting the engine and those for back-up starting/ switching off using the Keyless Entry and Start system, refer to the **Starting/ Switching off the engine using Keyless Entry and Start section.**

Stop & Start Automatic Function

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. red lights, traffic jams). The engine automatically restarts - START mode - as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again. Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Deactivation/Reactivation
By default, the function is activated when the ignition is switched on.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application or via the **Shortcuts for driving aids.**

3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen"
The display of a message on the instrument panel confirms the change of state.
If the function is deactivated while the engine is in STOP mode, it will restart immediately.

Associated indicator lights


Function activated: engine on standby (STOP mode)


Function deactivated or malfunction

Opening the hood
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.



Driving on flooded roads
Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation
Main conditions for operation
– The driver's door must be closed.
– The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
– The level of charge in the battery must be sufficient.
– The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
– The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)
The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates their intention to stop:
– **With an automatic gearbox**: with the gear selector in mode **D** or **M**, the brake pedal depressed until the vehicle stops or the gear selector in mode **N**, with the vehicle stationary.

Time counter
A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:
The engine will not go into standby if the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases:
– Steep slope (ascending or descending).
– Vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the **START/STOP** button).
– Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
– Demisting active.


In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Restarting the engine (START mode)
The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again:
With an automatic gearbox:
– With the selector in mode **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
– With the selector in mode **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
– With the selector in mode **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R, N, D** or **M**.
– With reverse gear engaged.

Special cases
The engine will restart automatically if the conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases:
– With an automatic gearbox, in mode **N**, vehicle speed exceeds 0.6 mph (1 km/h).


In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions


In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments on the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode
All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if there is a fault.

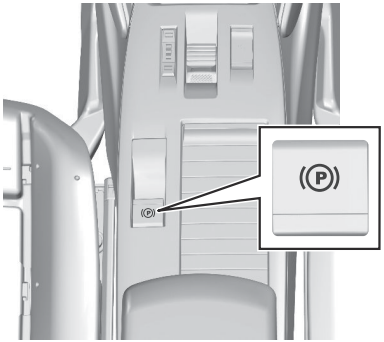
► Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the key or the **"START/STOP"** button.

12 V battery
The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification. All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Brakes

Parking brake

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.



Deactivating automatic operation
In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.
► Start the engine.
► Use the control to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
► Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
► Push the control for 10 to a maximum of 15 seconds.
► Release the control.
► Depress and hold the brake pedal.
► Pull the control for 2 seconds.

This indicator light on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.

► Release the control and the brake pedal.
From this point onwards, only the manual functions, using the control, allow the parking brake to be applied and released.
► Follow this procedure again to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator light on the instrument panel going out).

Parking

Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves).
The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing
With an automatic gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P**.
When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.
When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the electric parking brake must be applied before engaging mode **P** of the automatic gearbox.

Important!

Never drive with the parking brake applied. Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

Electric parking brake
At any time, with the engine running:

► To apply the parking brake, briefly pull the control.

► To release it, briefly push the control while pressing the brake pedal.

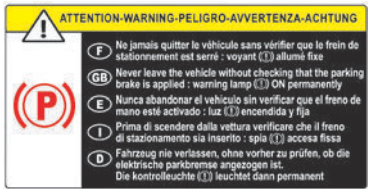
Automatic mode is activated by default.
This automatic operation can be temporarily deactivated.

Indicator lamp

This indicator lamp comes on both on the instrument panel and on the control to confirm that the parking brake has been applied accompanied by display of the message **"Parking brake applied".**
The indicator lamp goes out to confirm the release of the parking brake, accompanied by

the display of the message **"Parking brake released".**
The indicator lamp flashes in response to a manual request to apply or release the brake.

In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate.
As a safety measure, with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied:
the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing
Turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P** on the automatic gearbox.
When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation
Manual release
With the ignition on or engine running:

- Press the brake pedal.
- While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control.

If the brake pedal is not depressed, the parking brake is not released and a message is displayed.

Manual application
With the vehicle stationary:

- Briefly pull the control.

The control indicator lamp flashes to confirm the application request.

Automatic operation
Automatic release
First ensure that the engine is running and that the driver's door is closed.
The electric parking brake gradually releases automatically as the vehicle moves off.

With an automatic gearbox

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Select mode **D, M** or **R**.
- Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

With a drive selector

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Select mode **D, B** or **R**.
- Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are properly closed.

When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily. Risk of parking brake release.

Automatic application
With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.

It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.

In automatic mode, the parking brake can be manually applied or released at any time using the control.

Special cases
Immobilising the vehicle with the engine running
To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control.

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

In very cold conditions (ice), applying the parking brake is not recommended.
To immobilise the vehicle, place the chock against one of the wheels.

With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off.
The wheels are blocked.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, if you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode P will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Deactivating automatic operation
In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- Start the engine.
- Use the control to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
- Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- Push the control for 10 to a maximum of 15 seconds.
- Release the control.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Pull the control for 2 seconds.



This indicator lamp on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.

- Release the control and the brake pedal.

From this point onwards, only the manual functions, using the control, allow the parking brake to be applied and released.

- Follow this procedure again to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator lamp on the instrument panel going out).

Emergency braking
If depressing the brake pedal fails to provide effective braking or in exceptional circumstances (e.g. driver unwell, assisted driving), the vehicle can be braked by sustained pulling on the electric parking brake control. Braking continues for as long as the control is kept pulled, and ceases when the control is released.
The ABS and DSC systems stabilise the vehicle during emergency braking.
If emergency braking malfunctions, the message **"Parking brake fault"** will be displayed on the instrument panel.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, indicated by lighting one or both warning lamps on the instrument panel, the vehicle's stability is no longer ensured.

- In this case, ensure the vehicle's stability by successive and repeated "pull-release" actions on the electric parking brake control until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Regenerative braking

With the Brake level function and when decelerating
The Brake level function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal. The vehicle slows more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal.
The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's driving range.

The resulting deceleration of the vehicle does not cause the brake lamps to come on.

For each level of deceleration, the information appears on the dashboard in the form of one or many more "down" arrows close to **D.**
The deceleration level is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

If the function does not work, a message is displayed on the dashboard.

In some situations (e.g. battery full, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.
The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.

With the brake pedal
When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically

recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery.
This energy recovery also reduces use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

Transmission

Automatic Gearbox

Automatic 8-speed gearbox with push selector. It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via control paddles located behind the steering wheel.

Push Selector



P. Auto Park
Press this button to switch to Parking mode.
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.

R. Reverse

N. Neutral
To free-wheel and move the vehicle, with the ignition off.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

D. Driving in automatic mode
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load. The gearbox also manages braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

M. Driving in manual mode
Press this button to switch to manual mode.
The driver changes gear using the steeringmounted controls.

▶ In mode **N**, with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:

- Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
- Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

Special cases
To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

▶ In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.

▶ In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.

▶ To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Steering-mounted controls



(Depending on equipment)
In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.

▶ Pull the "**+**" or "**-**" paddle towards you and release to shift up or down a gear, respectively.

Information displayed on the instrument panel
Depending on equipment (Petrol and Hybrid only)
When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P	Parking
R	Reverse
N	Neutral
D1...8	Automatic forward gear (Sport mode)
M1...8	Manual forward gear (Manual mode)

The state of the gearbox remains displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching off the ignition.

Operation
Only appropriate mode change instructions are validated.
With the engine running, if it is necessary to depress the brake pedal to change modes, an alert message will be displayed on the instrument panel.

With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal. Never depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!

If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

At speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), opening the driver's door will engage mode **P** - risk of sudden braking!

In the event of battery failure, it is essential to place the chock(s) supplied with the tool kit against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Special aspects of automatic mode
The gearbox selects the gear that provides optimal performance based on ambient temperature, road profile, vehicle loading and driving style.
For maximum acceleration, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the selected gear until the maximum engine speed is reached.
Steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Special aspects of manual mode
The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Starting the vehicle

- Fully depress the brake pedal.
- Start the engine.
- With your foot on the brake pedal, push once or twice backwards to select automatic mode D, or forwards to shift into reverse gear R.
- Release the brake pedal.
- Accelerate gradually to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

Automatic gearbox
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Switching the vehicle off
Regardless of the current gearbox mode, mode **P** is immediately engaged automatically when the ignition is switched off.
However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (time to enable freewheeling mode).
Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.



The corresponding indicator lamps on the gear selector and the electric parking brake control must be on, as well as the indicator lamps on the instrument panel.

Gearbox malfunction



This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

Switching of the gearbox to back-up mode
Mode **D** locks in third gear.
The paddles on the steering wheel do not work and mode **M** is no longer accessible.
You may feel a significant jolt on engaging reverse gear. This will not damage the gearbox.

Selector malfunction
Minor malfunction



This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Drive carefully.
Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
In some cases, the selector indicator lamps may no longer come on, but the gearbox state is still displayed on the instrument panel.

Major malfunction



This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message.

You must stop the vehicle.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic Gearbox (hybrid)

6-speed electrified dual-clutch automatic gearbox with push selector for hybrid vehicles.
It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via control paddles located behind the steering wheel.
It includes an electric motor, which improves the performance of the petrol engine, reduces fuel consumption and drives in all-electric.

P. Auto Park
R. Reverse
N. Neutral
D. Driving in automatic mode.
M. Driving in manual mode

► In mode N, with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:
- Forwards, mode R is selected.
- Backwards, mode D is selected.

Electric motor

The electric motor included in the automatic gearbox, which is used for the first start, provides 12 V power supply via the DC/DC converter and provides electric assistance to the petrol engine.

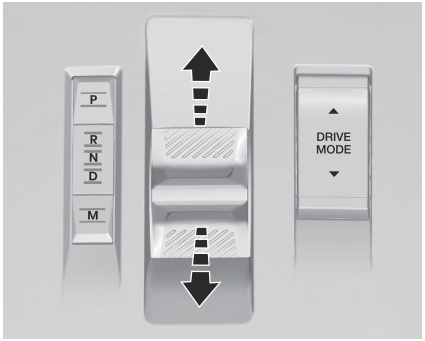
The electric motor has the following features:
– Provide an additional torque to the gearbox, optimising the performance of the petrol engine.
– Recover the kinetic energy of the deceleration phases, converting it into electrical energy, which can be used for traction or for the power supply of electrical accessories installed on the vehicle.
– Recharge the 48 V traction battery when the state of charge is too low.
– Provide all-electric driving only.
These features are achieved through the following functions set of automatic operating mode:
– e-Boost.
– e-Creeping.
– e-Launch.
– e-Queueing.
– e-Parking.
A manual operating mode is also available to activate/deactivate the restart of the petrol engine while driving: the e-Auto mode.

Special aspects of automatic mode
These functions respond to common driving situations where the electric motor is available to provide additional power or zero-emission driving.
e-Launch
With the petrol engine off, this function allows the vehicle to run in electric mode without affecting performance.
By depressing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle starts to drive as soon as the mode D or R of the automatic gearbox is selected.
e-Creeping
With the petrol engine off, by releasing the brake pedal, this function allows the vehicle to be moved forward or backward in electric mode without having to depress the accelerator pedal, as soon as the mode D or R of the automatic gearbox is selected.
e-Queueing
This function makes it possible to follow a queue of vehicles with several stops followed by restarts of the vehicle, using the e-Creeping, e-Launch and electric driving modes.
e-Parking
This function allows parking manoeuvres to be carried out at reduced speed with the help of the electric motor when the mode D or R of the automatic gearbox is selected.
e-Boost
This function allows simultaneous operation of the petrol engine and the electric motor, combined with the automatic gearbox.
By fully depressing the accelerator pedal ("kickdown" function), when the traction battery is fully charged, it is possible to exceed the torque of the petrol engine alone, thanks to the additional torque provided by the electric motor.

Repeated use of the brake pedal causes the restart of petrol engine to provide braking assistance.

Special aspects of manual mode
The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.
The petrol engine can also be switched off in manual mode when stopped in traffic or when the accelerator pedal is released.
The all-electric potential of the driving mode used (**Normal** or **Eco**) is also retained.

Drive selector (Electric)



The drive selector is a pulse selector with a regenerative braking function.
The drive selector provides traction control based on the driving style, the road profile and the vehicle load. With regenerative braking activated, it also manages engine braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

P. Park
Button for parking the vehicle: the front wheels are locked (the button lights up to indicate that it is activated).
R. Reverse
To engage reverse gear, with your foot on the brake pedal.
N. Neutral
To move the vehicle with the ignition off and so allow it to free-wheel.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.
D. Drive (automatic forward gear)
B. Brake (regenerative braking)
Button for changing to Drive/automatic forward gear mode with regenerative braking function (the button lights up to indicate that it is activated).

Information displayed on the instrument panel
When the ignition is switched on, the drive selector status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P Park.
R Reverse.
N Neutral.
D Drive (automatic forward gear).
B Brake (automatic forward gear with regenerative braking function activated).

Operation

▶ In mode **N**, with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:

- Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
- Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

Special cases **D** to **R**
To avoid mode **N** (quick change from and back again):

▶ In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.
▶ In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.
▶ To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Regenerative braking

With the Brake function and when decelerating
For more information on Regenerative braking, refer to the corresponding section.

Free Wheeling
In certain situations, it is necessary to put the vehicle into free-wheeling mode (e.g. towing, on a rolling road, automatic car wash (Wash mode), rail or sea transport).
The procedure varies according to the type of gearbox and parking brake.

Never leave the vehicle unattended with the vehicle into free-wheeling mode.

Keyless Entry and Start
You must not depress the brake pedal while switching the ignition on again, then switching it off. If you do, the engine will start, requiring you to restart the procedure.

With automatic gearbox (EAT8 or Hybrid) or drive selector and electric parking brake
Release procedure



▶ With the vehicle stationary and the engine running, depress the brake pedal and select mode **N.**

Within 5 seconds:

▶ Depress and hold the brake pedal, then observe this order: switch off the engine and move the push selector forwards or backwards.
▶ Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition.
▶ Place your foot on the brake and press the electric parking brake control to release it.
▶ Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

A message is displayed on the instrument panel to confirm the unlocking of the wheels for 15 minutes.

After 15 minutes or reverting to normal operation

▶ While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine and select mode **P**.

Driving Modes

For petrol or hybrid versions

Whenever the ignition is switched on, Normal driving mode is selected by default.

Normal
To restore the default settings.

Eco
To reduce energy consumption by reducing the performance of the heating and air conditioning, without deactivating them.
Free-wheeling in **Eco** mode: depending on version, with the EAT8 gearbox, switching into "free-wheeling" is encouraged to slow the vehicle down without using engine braking. You can save fuel by taking your foot gradually and fully off the accelerator pedal in anticipation of slowing down.

Sport
To obtain more dynamic driving with action on the accelerator and gear changes with an automatic gearbox.
The selection of the **Sport** mode deactivates the Stop & Start function.

For electric versions

Each time the ignition is switched on, Normal mode is selected by default.

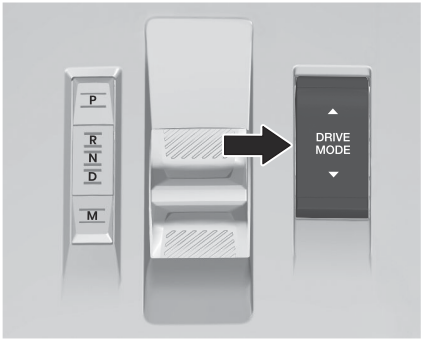
Normal
This optimises the driving range and dynamic performance.

Eco
Optimises energy consumption, by reducing the output of the heating and air conditioning (without actually deactivating them) and limiting both motor torque and power.

Sport
Enables more dynamic driving, acting on the power steering, accelerator and gear changes with a drive selector and the possibility of displaying the vehicle's dynamic settings on the instrument panel.

Driving mode selector

The driving modes available depend on the engine and equipment of the vehicle.
Driving modes are selected using the following control:



▶ Press the control to display the modes on the instrument panel.

When the message disappears, the selected mode is activated and remains indicated on the instrument panel (except Normal mode).

Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine)
This system is designed to reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most suitable gear.

Operation
Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may recommend skipping one or more gears. Gear engagement recommendations are not to be considered mandatory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.
The system cannot be deactivated.

With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.



The information appears on the instrument panel, in the form of an arrow and the recommended gear.

The system adapts the gear change instructions according to the driving conditions (e.g. slope, load) and driving style (e.g. power demand, acceleration, braking).
The system never suggests:
– engaging first gear.
– engaging reverse gear.

Fuel

Fuels Compatibility

E5 E10

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (e.g. pure or diluted vegetable or animal oils, domestic fuel) is strictly prohibited - risk of damaging the engine and fuel system!

The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (Petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Travelling abroad
Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.
In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 50 litres.
Reserve level: approximately 6 litres.
Low fuel level

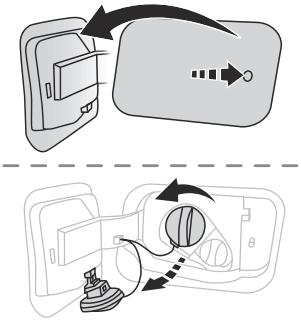
When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, about **6 litres of fuel remain.**
Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the message and the audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards 0.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

A small arrow by the warning lamp indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located on.

Stop & Start / e-Auto mode
Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode or in stand-by; you must switch off the ignition.

Refuelling
When refuelling, at least 5 litres must be added in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is normal, caused by the sealing of the fuel system.
To refuel in complete safety:

▶ **Always switch off the engine.**



▶ With the vehicle unlocked, press the rearcentral part of the filler flap to open it.

▶ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for your vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).

▶ Turn the filler cap to the left, remove it and place it on its support (on the filler flap).

▶ Insert the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (to minimise the risk of splashing).

Do not continue after the nozzle's third cutout.Doing so may cause malfunctions.

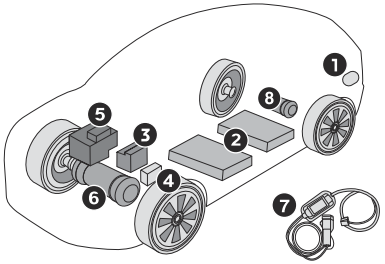
▶ Put the filler cap back in place and turn it to the right.

▶ Close the fuel filler flap.

If you have put in the wrong fuel for the vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.
For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.
The filler neck is narrower, admitting unleaded petrol nozzles only.

Charging



1. Charging connector
2. Traction battery
3. Accessory battery
4. Heat pump
5. On-board charger
6. Electric motor
7. Charging cable

The charging connectors **1** enable 3 types of charging:

▶ – Domestic charging in mode 2 using a domestic socket and associated charging cable **7.**

▶ – Accelerated charging in mode 3 using an accelerated charging unit (Wallbox).

▶ – Superfast charging in mode 4 using a fast public charger.

The 400 V traction battery **2** uses Lithium-Ion technology. It stores and supplies the energy required for the operation of the electric motor, air conditioning and heating. Its charge level is represented by an indicator and a reserve power warning lamp on the instrument panel.
The 12 V accessory battery **3** powers the vehicle's conventional electrical system. It is recharged automatically by the traction battery via the on-board charger.
The heat pump **4** provides passenger compartment heating and regulates traction battery and on-board charger cooling.
The on-board charger **5** manages the domestic charging (mode **2**) and accelerated charging (mode **3**) of the traction battery as well as the recharging of the 12 V accessory battery.
The electric motor 6 provides propulsion in accordance with the selected driving mode and driving conditions. It recovers energy during vehicle braking and deceleration phases.

Battery Charging Operation

400 V electrical system
The electric drive system, which operates at a voltage of approximately 400 V, is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:

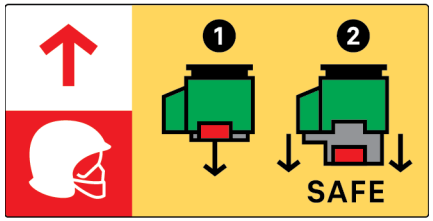


An electric vehicle's power train can become hot during use and after switching off the ignition.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.

High voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries or even fatal electric shock.
Since damage to high voltage components is not visible, CITROËN recommends that you: – Never touch the components, damaged or not, and never let your jewelry or other metallic objects come into contact with these components.
– Never work on the orange high voltage cables or on any other high voltage component marked with the Electric risk label.
Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
– Never damage, modify or remove the orange high voltage cables or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
– Never open, modify or remove the cover of the traction battery.
– Never work with cutting and forming tools or heat sources near high voltage components and cables.
In case of low level of fluid in the cooling tank, the refilling shall only be performed in a qualified and trained workshop to verify that the leakage is not in the traction battery.
Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
Damage to the vehicle or the traction battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later.

CITROËN recommends that you:
– Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, warning that the vehicle is equipped with a traction battery.
– Never touch the liquids leaking from the traction battery.
– Do not inhale the gases emitted by the traction battery which are toxic.
– Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.

In the event of a problem
All work on or modifications to the vehicle's electrical system (including the traction battery, connectors, orange cables and other components visible from the interior or exterior) is strictly prohibited - risk of severe burns or potentially fatal electric shock (short-circuit/electrocution)! Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This label is intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle.
No other person must touch the device shown on this label.

In the event of an accident or impact to the vehicle's underbody
In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When washing
Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly.
Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

High-pressure washing
To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body.
Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!
Never connect / disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

Traction battery
This battery stores the energy that powers the electric motor and the thermal comfort equipment in the passenger compartment. It is discharged during use, and must therefore be regularly recharged. There is no need to wait for the traction battery to fall to its reserve level before recharging.
The range of the battery may vary according to the type of driving, the route, the use of thermal comfort equipment and the ageing of its components.

The lifespan of the traction battery depends on multiple factors, such as climatic conditions, distance travelled and how often it has been fast-charged.

To preserve the mileage of your vehicle and the durability of your traction battery, CITROËN recommends that you:
-Do not fully charge the battery of your electric vehicle daily (charge the traction battery below 80% as often as possible).
-Do not completely discharge the battery.
-Do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than 12 hours) when the traction battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
-Limit the use of fast charging.
-Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C and above +60°C for more than 24 hours.
-Avoid charging the vehicle at negative temperatures (except if the vehicle ran more than 20 minutes) or above +30°C.
-Do not use the vehicle's traction battery as a generator of energy.
-Do not use a generator to recharge your vehicle's traction battery.

In the event of damage to the traction battery
It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself.
Do not touch liquids coming from the battery, and in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Disposal of the traction battery
The traction battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations of CITROËN are followed.
If it becomes necessary to replace the battery, contact the CITROËN dealer for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.
In accordance with regulations, CITROËN ensures a second life or recycling of this component in collaboration with qualified operators.

Battery charging operation (electric)

Precautions for people fitted with a pacemaker



If you are fitted with a pacemaker or similar device, speak to a doctor about the precautions to take and to observe.

For **domestic or accelerated charging**, do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or charging unit, even for a short time.
For **superfast charging**, do not use it yourself and avoid approaching a public superfast charging point. Leave the area and ask a third party to recharge the vehicle.

Charging cables
The charging cable supplied with the vehicle (depending on version) is compatible with the electrical systems in the country of sale. When travelling abroad, check the compatibility of local electrical systems with the charging cable.

A full range of charging cables is available from your dealer.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for more information and to obtain suitable charging cables.

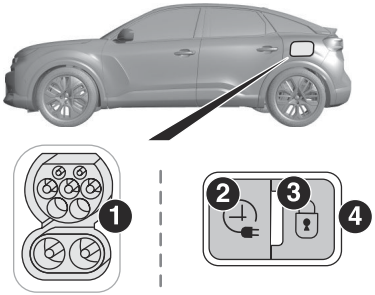
Identification labels on charging sockets/ connectors

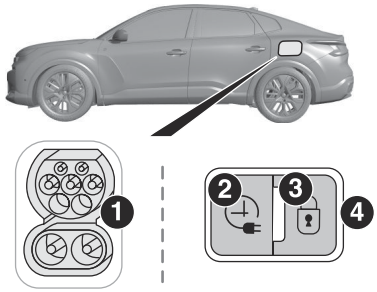
C — Charging connector, vehicle side (mode 2 or mode 3)

C — Charging socket, charger side (mode 3)

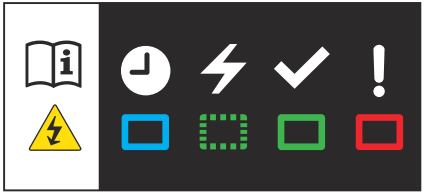
K — Charging connector, vehicle side (mode 4)

Charging connectors and indicator lamps





1. Charging connectors
2. Deferred charging activation button
3. Nozzle locking indicator lamp
   Fixed red: nozzle positioned correctly and locked in the connector.
   Flashing red: nozzle incorrectly positioned or locking not possible.
4. Charging indicator lamp



State of charging indicator lamp	Meaning
Fixed white	Welcome lighting on opening the flap and disconnecting the charging cable.
Fixed blue	Deferred charging.
Flashing green	Charging.
Fixed green	Charging complete. The charging indicator lamp goes off after about 2 minutes as the vehicle's functions go into standby. The indicator lamp comes on again when the vehicle is unlocked with the Keyless Entry and Start system or when a door is opened to indicate that the battery is fully charged.
Fixed red	Malfunction.

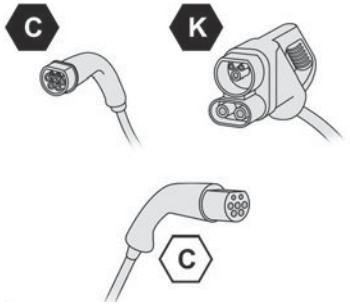
In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.
Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire!
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Charging cables, sockets and chargers

The charging cable supplied with the vehicle (depending on version) is compatible with the electrical systems in the country of sale. When travelling abroad, check the compatibility of local electrical systems with the charging cable.
A full range of charging cables is available from your dealer.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for more information and to obtain suitable charging cables.

Identification labels on charging sockets/ connectors

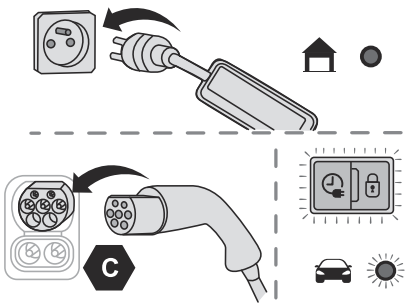
Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.



The meaning of each identification label is as follows:

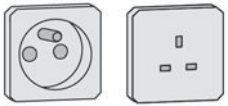
Identification label	Location	Configuration	Power type/ Voltage range
C	Charging connector (vehicle side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
C	Charging socket (charger side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
K	Charging connector (vehicle side)	COMBO 2 (FF)	DC 50 V – 500 V

Domestic charging (mode 2)



► Connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket.
When the connection is made, all of the indicator lights on the control unit light up, then only the **POWER** indicator light remains on in green.
► Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.
The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green **CHARGE** indicator lights in the flap, then those on the control unit.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all connections are properly established.

Domestic socket
(standard charging - alternating current (AC))

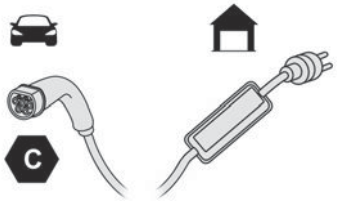


Mode 2 with a standard socket: 8 A maximum charging current.



Mode 2 with a Green'Up socket: 16 A maximum charging current.
To have this type of socket installed, call a professional installer.

Specific domestic charging cable - mode 2 (AC)

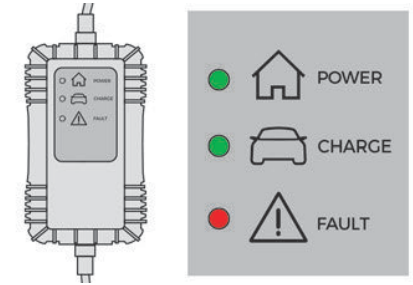


Identification label **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side).

Specific domestic charging cable (mode 2)

You must not damage the cable.
In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.

Control unit (mode 2)



POWER
Green: electrical connection established; charging can begin.

CHARGE
Flashing green: charging in progress or temperature pre-conditioning activated. Fixed green: charging complete.

FAULT
Red: fault; charging not permitted or must be stopped immediately. Check that everything is connected correctly and that the electrical system is not faulty.
If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Upon plugging the charging cable into a domestic socket, all of the indicator lamps come on briefly.

If no indicator lamps come on, check the domestic socket's circuit-breaker:
– If the circuit-breaker has tripped, contact a professional to check that the electrical system is compatible and/or carry out any necessary repairs.
– If the circuit-breaker has not tripped, stop using the charging cable and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Control unit label - Recommendations

Refer to the handbook before use.



1. Incorrect use of this charging cable may result in fire, property damage and serious injury or death by electrocution!
2. Always use a correctly earthed power socket, protected by a 30 mA residual current device.
3. Always use an electrical socket protected by a circuit-breaker appropriate for the electrical circuit's current rating.
4. The weight of the control unit must not be borne by the electrical socket, plug and cables.
5. Never use this charging cable if it is defective or in any way damaged.
6. Never attempt to repair or open this charging cable. It contains no repairable parts - replace the charging cable if it is damaged.
7. Never immerse this charging cable in water.
8. Never use this charging cable with an extension cable, a multi-plug socket, a conversion adaptor or on a damaged electrical socket.
9. Do not unplug the plug from the wall as a means of stopping charging.
10. Immediately stop charging, by locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the remote control key, if the charging cable or wall socket feel burning hot to the touch.
11. This charging cable includes components liable to cause electrical arcing or sparks. Do not expose to flammable vapours.
12. Only use this charging cable with CITROËN vehicles.
13. Never plug the cable into the wall socket (or unplug it) with wet hands.
14. Do not force the connector if it is locked into the vehicle.

Control unit label - State of indicator lamps

	State of the indicator lamp
Off	○
On	● ●
Flashing	✳ ✳

Messages and related alerts

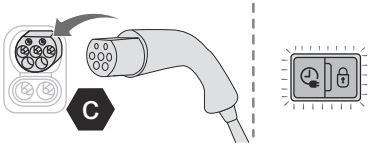
POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
○	○	○		Not connected to the power supply or power is not available from the infrastructure.
● (green)	● (green)	● (red)		The control unit is currently performing a self-test.
● (green)	○	○		Connected only to the infrastructure or to the infrastructure and to the Electric Vehicle (EV) but no charging in progress.
● (green)	✳ (green)	○		Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is on charge or in a temperature preconditioning sequence.
● (green)	● (green)	○		Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is waiting for charging or the charging of the EV is completed.
○	○	● (red)		Control unit malfunction. No charging allowed. If an error indicator reappears after a manual reset, the control unit must be checked by a CITROËN dealer before the next charge.
✳ (green)	✳ (green)	✳ (red)		The control unit is in diagnostic mode.

Manual reset procedure and recommendations

Manual reset procedure
The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket.
Then, reconnect the wall socket first. For more information, refer to the handbook.

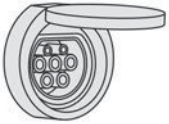
Accelerated charging, mode 3

Accelerated charging (mode 3)



► Follow the instructions for use of the accelerated charging unit (Wallbox).
► Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.
The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator light in the flap flashes green.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection has been properly established.

Accelerated charging unit (depending on version)
(accelerated charging - single-phase or threeph-hase alternating current (AC))

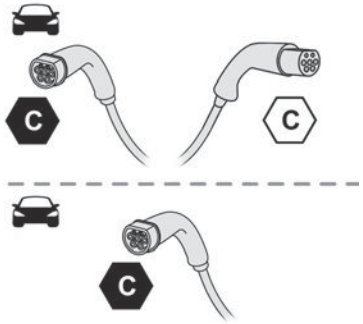


In mode 3 with an accelerated charging unit: 32 A maximum charging current.



In mode 3 with an accelerated charging unit (Wallbox): 32 A maximum charging current.

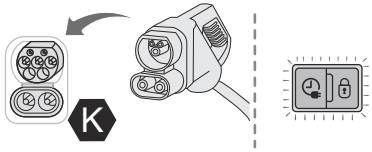
Charging cable, mode 3 (AC)



Identification labels **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).

Accelerated charging unit
Do not disassemble or modify the charging unit - Risk of electrocution and/or fire! Refer to the charging unit manufacturer's user manual for the operating instructions.

Superfast charging (mode 4)



► Follow the instructions for use and connect the fast public charger cable to the vehicle connector.
The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator light in the flap flashes green.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection is properly established.

Fast public charger
(superfast charging - direct current (DC))

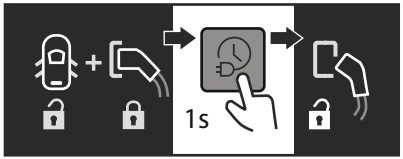


Charging cable, mode 4 (DC)
(integrated into the fast public charger)



Identification label **K** on the charging connector (vehicle side).
Only use fast public chargers where the cable length does not exceed 30 metres.

Disconnection



Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:
► If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.
► If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it**.
The red indicator light in the flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.
► Within **30 seconds**, remove the charging nozzle.

Charging the traction battery (electric)

To recharge, connect the vehicle to a domestic electricity supply (domestic or accelerated charging) or to a fast public charger (superfast charging).
For a full charge, follow the desired charging procedure without pausing it, until it ends automatically. Charging can be either immediate or deferred (except fast public charger, mode 4).
You can stop domestic or accelerated charging at any time by unlocking the vehicle and removing the nozzle. For superfast charging, refer to the fast public charger.
For more information on the charging displays on the **Instrument panel** and the **Touch screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

It is also possible to monitor the charging progress using the **MyCitroën App** application.
For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into the connector on the vehicle. A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.

Cooling the traction battery
The cooling fan in the engine compartment comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

Low charging / Driving
Driving when the charge level of the traction battery is too low can lead to the vehicle breaking down and can lead to accidents or serious injuries. ALWAYS make sure the traction battery has a sufficient charge level.

Low charging / Parking
If the outside temperature is negative, it is recommended not to park your vehicle outside for several hours at a low charging (less than 20%).

Vehicle in storage for more than 1 month
In the event of a long period of non-use of the vehicle (beyond 4 weeks) without the possibility of charging when restarting, the self-discharge may make it impossible to restart if the traction battery charge level is a low or very low, especially at negative ambient temperatures. ALWAYS make sure that the traction battery has a charge between 20% and 40% if you do not plan to use your vehicle for several weeks.
Do not connect the charging cable.
Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and 30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).
Disconnect the cable from the (+) terminal of the accessory battery in the engine compartment.
Connect a 12 V battery charger to the (+) and (-) terminals of the accessory battery about every 3 months in order to recharge the accessory battery and maintain an operating voltage.

Precautions
Our electric vehicles have been developed in accordance with the recommendations on the maximum limits for electromagnetic fields, as issued by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP - 1998 Guidelines).

Wearers of pacemakers or equivalent devices
Ask your doctor about what precautions you should take, or ask the manufacturer of your implanted electro-medical device about whether its operation is guaranteed in an environment which complies with the ICNIRP recommendations.

If in doubt
Domestic or accelerated charging: do not remain inside or near the vehicle, or near the charging cable or charging unit, even for a short time.
Superfast charging: do not use the system yourself and avoid approaching public fast charging points. Leave the area and ask a third party to recharge the vehicle.

For domestic or accelerated charging

Before charging
Depending on the context:
☞ Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.
☞ Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle.
You should preferably use the charging cable available as an accessory. For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

During charging
While charging is in progress, unlocking the vehicle will cause the charging to stop.
If no action is taken on one of the openings (door or boot) or on the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically.
Never work under the bonnet:
– Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns! – The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

After charging
Check that the charging flap is closed.
Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

For superfast charging

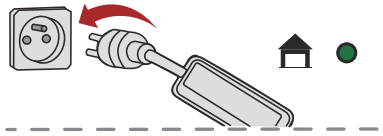
Before charging
Check that the fast public charging station and its charging cable are compatible with the vehicle.
If the exterior temperature is below:
– 0°C, charging times may be extended.
– -20°C, charging is still possible, but charging times may be extended even further (the battery has to be heated first).

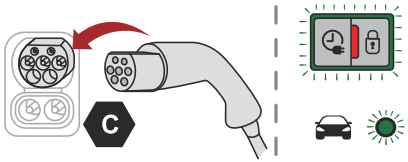
After charging
Check that the charging flap is closed.

Connection

- ▶ Before charging, check that the drive selector is in mode **P**, otherwise charging is not possible.
- ▶ Open the charging flap by pressing the push-button, and check that there are no foreign bodies on the charging connector.

Domestic charging, mode 2





- ▶ Connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket.

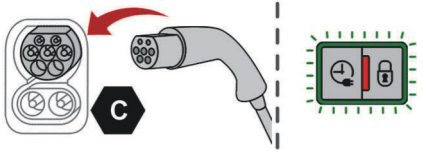
When the connection is made, all of the indicator lamps on the control unit light up, then only the **POWER** indicator lamp remains on in green.

- ▶ Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- ▶ Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green **CHARGE** indicator lamps in the flap, then those on the control unit.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all connections are properly established.
The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

! When charging is complete and while the charging cable is still connected, opening the driver's door will display the charge level on the instrument panel for about 20 seconds.

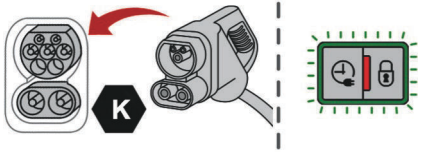
Accelerated charging, mode 3



- ▶ Follow the accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) user instructions.
- ▶ Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- ▶ Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator lamp in the flap flashes green.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection has been properly established.
The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Superfast charging, mode 4



- ▶ Depending on version, remove the protective cover from the lower part of the connector.
- ▶ Follow the instructions for use of the fast public charger and connect the cable from the fast public charger to the vehicle's connector.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green charging indicator lamp in the flap.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection is properly established.
The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Deferred charging

The deferred charging start time is set to midnight by default.
Depending on equipment, this time can be changed.

Settings
On a smartphone or tablet

You can programme the deferred charging function at any time via the **MyCitroën App** application.

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.
In the vehicle, with Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

In **Applications** select the **Deferred charge.**

or

Press the **Home** button followed by **Applications**.

- Set the charging start time.
- Press **OK**.

The setting is saved in the system.
In the vehicle, with 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

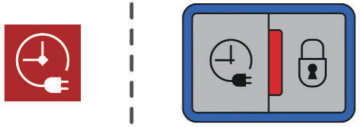
In the **Energy** touch screen application, select the **Charging** tab.

- Set the charging start time.
- Press **OK**.

Activation

Deferred charging is only possible with modes 2 and 3.

- After programming the deferred charging, connect your vehicle to the desired charging equipment.



- Lock the vehicle.
- Press this button in the flap within one minute to activate the system (confirmed by the charging indicator lamp coming on in blue).

Disconnection



Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:

- If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it.**
- If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.

The red indicator lamp in the charging flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.

- Within **30 seconds**, remove the charging nozzle.

The charging indicator lamp comes on in white.

With selective door unlocking activated, press the unlocking button twice to disconnect the charging nozzle.

When charging is complete, the green charging indicator lamp in the flap goes out after about 2 minutes.

Domestic charging, mode 2
The end of charging is confirmed when the green **CHARGE** indicator lamp on the control unit and the green charging indicator lamp in the flap come on fixed.

- Replace the protective cover on the charging nozzle and close the charging flap.
- Disconnect the control unit end of the charging cable from the domestic socket.

Accelerated charging, mode 3
The end of charging is indicated by the charging control unit and by the fixed lighting of the green indicator lamp in the flap.

- Hang up the nozzle on the charging unit and close the charging flap.

Superfast charging, mode 4
The end of charging is indicated by the charger and by the fixed lighting of the green indicator lamp in the flap.

You can also pause charging by pressing this button in the flap (in mode 4 only).

- Hang up the nozzle on the charger.
- Depending on version, replace the protective cover on the lower section and close the charging flap.

When the charging nozzle is disconnected, a message on the instrument panel indicates that charging is complete, even if the charging nozzle was disconnected before full charging was completed.

Vehicle Loading

Roof bars

As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse roof bars approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

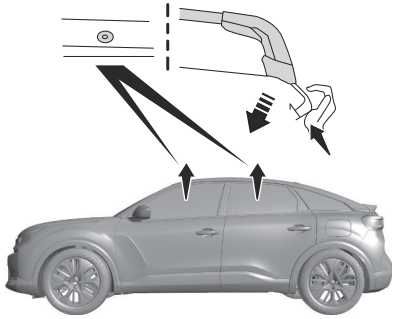
Maximum load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carrier): **80 kg**.
As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

Recommendations
Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

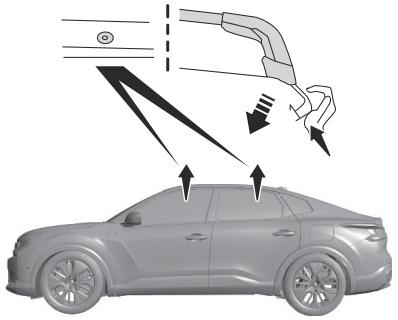
Sunroof
Check that the load does not pass below the roof bars so that it does not impede the movements of the sunroof - risk of major damage!

Direct fitting on roof

C4



C4-X



The transverse bars must only be fixed at the four anchorage points located on the roof frame. These points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed.
The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each anchorage point.

Load reduction mode

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Towing Device

Load distribution

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towable load must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

Use genuine towing devices and wiring harnesses approved by CITROËN.
We recommend having them fitted by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, they must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated while an approved towing system is in use.

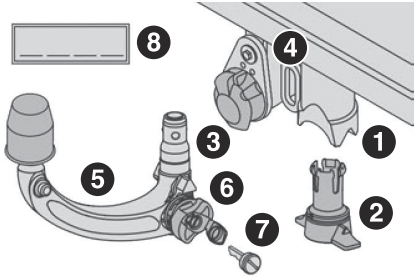
Comply with the maximum authorised towable weight, as indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, on the manufacturer's label and in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

If using accessories attached to the towing device (e.g. bicycle carriers, tow boxes):
– Comply with the maximum authorised nose weight.
– Do not transport more than 4 conventional bicycles or 2 electric bicycles.
When loading bicycles onto a bicycle carrier on a towball, be sure to place the heaviest bicycles as close as possible to the vehicle.

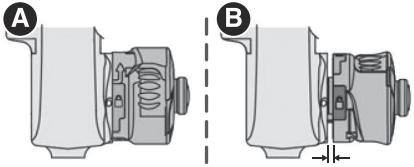
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

Electric motor
An electric vehicle cannot under any circumstances be fitted with a towing device.It is therefore not possible to tow a trailer or caravan.

Presentation
No tools are required to install or remove this genuine towing device.



1. Carrier
2. Protective plug
3. Connection socket
4. Safety eye
5. Detachable towball
6. Locking/unlocking wheel
7. Security key lock
8. Label to note the key references



A. **Locked** position (the **green** marks are opposite each other); the wheel is in contact with the towball (no gap).

B. **Unlocked** position (**red** mark opposite the **green** mark); the wheel is no longer in contact with the towball (gap of around 5 mm).

Affix the enclosed label in a clearly visible location, close to the carrier or in the boot.

Trailers with LED lamps are not compatible with the wiring harness of this device.

To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Before each use
Verify that the towball is correctly fitted, checking the follow points:
– The green mark on the wheel is aligned with the white mark on the towball.
– The wheel is in contact with the towball (position **A**).
– The security key lock is closed and the key removed; the wheel can no longer be operated.
– The towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by attempting to shake it with your hand.
If the towball is not locked, the trailer can become detached - risk of an accident!

During use
Never release the locking system with a trailer or load carrier on the towball.
Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle - the Gross Train Weight or GTW.
Always comply with the maximum authorised load on the towing device: if it is exceeded, this device may become detached from the vehicle - risk of an accident!
Before driving, check the headlamp height adjustment and check that the lamps on the trailer operate correctly.
For more information on **Headlamp height adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

After use
When travelling without a trailer or load carrier, remove the towball and fit the protective plug into the carrier, to provide clear visibility of the number plate and/or its lighting.

Towing

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

Do not exceed the maximum towable weights.
At altitude: reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the lower air density at high altitudes decreases engine performance.

New vehicle: do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off
Nose weight

▶ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Tires

▶ Check the tire pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

▶ Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlight beam height of your vehicle.

If a genuine towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid activating the audio signal.

When driving
Cooling
Towing a trailer uphill causes the coolant temperature to increase. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the

exterior temperature. The fan's cooling capacity does not increase with engine speed.

- Reduce speed and lower the engine speed to limit the amount of heating produced.
- Pay constant attention to the coolant temperature.



If this warning light and the **STOP** warning light come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes
Using the engine brake is recommended to limit the overheating of the brakes. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

Side wind
Bear in mind that the vehicle will be more susceptible to wind when towing.

Anti-theft protection
Electronic immobiliser
The keys contain a code, which must be recognised by the vehicle before starting is possible.
If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a dealer.

Driving Tips

- Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).
- During long trips, take a break every 2 hours.

Important!

Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation. Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

Never drive with the parking brake applied. Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

Never park the vehicle and never leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves). The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

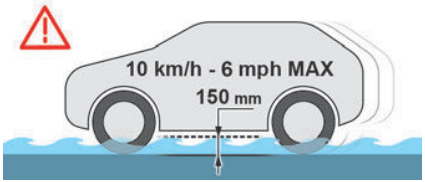
Never drive on surfaces covered with vegetation (e.g. tall grass, accumulated dead leaves, crops, debris) such as a field, a country lane overgrown with bushes or a grassy verge.
This vegetation could come into contact with the vehicle's exhaust system or other systems which are very hot. Risk of fire!

Make sure you do not leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire. Risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position N or P (depending on the type of gearbox).

Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.

On flooded roads
We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to your vehicle's electrical systems.



If the vehicle absolutely must drive through a flooded section of road:

- ▶ Check that the depth of the water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
- ▶ Deactivate the Stop & Start function.
- ▶ Drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).
- ▶ Do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Noise (Electric)

On the outside

Due to the vehicle's quiet operation when driving, the driver must pay particular attention. When manoeuvring, the driver must always check the vehicle's immediate surroundings. At speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), the pedestrian horn warns other road users of the vehicle's presence.

Cooling the traction battery The cooling fan comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

On the inside

During use, you may hear certain perfectly normal noises specific to electric vehicles, such as:

- Traction battery relay when starting.
- Vacuum pump when braking.
- Vehicle tires or aerodynamics when driving.
- Jolting and knocking noise during hill starts.

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations

Legal Obligations
In order to comply with European regulations and for safety reasons, these functions reactivate after each starting of the vehicle, even if previously deactivated:
- Speed Limit Information in the Road signs recognition system.
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
- Lane keeping assist.
- Driver Attention Warning by Camera.
- Parking sensors.

Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.
These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

Driving aids
You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

Manoeuvring aids
The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Radar(s)
The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g.mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g.heavy rain, snow), or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).

Driving aids camera
This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windshield area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windshield regularly.
Poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (e.g. headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windshield replacement, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Other cameras
The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Parking Sensors
The operation of the parking sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audio signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Maintenance
Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

Mats/Pedal trims
The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

Units of speed
Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

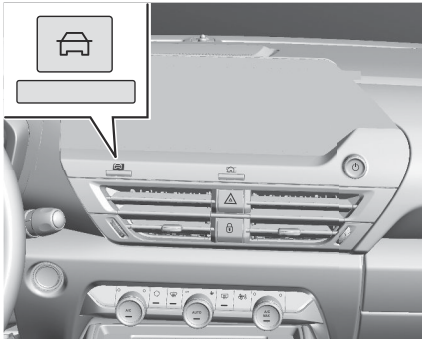
Shortcuts for driving aids
With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen
The full list of available driving aids can be found in the **Functions** tab.
Driving aids can be accessed directly to quickly activate/deactivate them.
Driving aids chosen by the user are stored in the **Shortcuts**tab (e.g. Stop & Start, Lane keeping assist).
Other driving aids can be added or deleted from this tab.

It is configured in the **ADAS>Functions** touch screen application.

▶ Press the button corresponding to the driving assistance concerned:

• Full symbol: the function is added to the **Shortcuts** tab.
• Empty symbol: the function is deleted from the **Shortcuts** tab.

▶ Check the modification in the **Shortcuts** tab.



▶ Press this button to access directly to the **Shortcuts** tab.

Multiple deactivation
It is possible to deactivate several driver assistance functions simultaneously.
This is done in two steps:
– First of all, the selection of all the functions that you want to deactivate.
– Secondly, the simultaneous deactivation of all these functions.

Deactivation of these functions



▶ Press and hold this button on the dashboard.



All previously selected functions are deactivated until the vehicle is next restarted (confirmed by an audio signal).

Selection of functions



▶ Press this button on the dashboard to display the **ADAS** tabs.

▶ Select the **Functions** tab.



▶ Press this button to display the list of available functions.

▶ Select the functions to deactivate (e.g. Stop-Start, Lane Keeping Assist).



▶ Press this button to return to the previous page.

The functions to deactivate are saved in the system.

Collision Avoidance Assistance System

For more information, refer to the "GENERAL INFORMATION" chapter in "Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS)" section.



This system:
– warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist.
– reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.

The speed will be reduced by a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) (versions with camera only) or by a maximum of 31 mph (50 km/h) (versions with camera and radar).

The system also takes motorcyclists into account.
It may also react on animals. Animals (especially animals smaller than 0.5 m) and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system is comprised of three functions:
– Collision Risk Alert.
– Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA).
– Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).
The vehicle has a multifunction camera located at the top of the windshield and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

This system does not replace the need for driver vigilance.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

As soon as the system detects a potential collision, it prepares the braking circuit. This may cause slight noise, A/C ventilation stop for a few seconds and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Operating conditions and limits

Vehicle moving forward without trailer.
Brake system operational.
Seat belts fastened for all passengers.
Stabilised speed on roads with no or low curvature.



This warning light, lights up on the instrument panel without any additional message, to indicate that the automatic braking system is not available.

This is a normal behavior indicating that a condition is not fulfilled and which does not request the support of a workshop.
In any situations with ignition on where automatic braking presents a risk, deactivating the system is recommended, for instance:
– Towing a trailer (particularly a trailer without its own braking system).

– Carrying long objects on roof bars.
– Driving with snow chains.
– Using an automatic car wash.
– Performing any maintenance (e.g. changing a wheel, working inside the engine compartment).
– Placing the vehicle on a rolling bench in a workshop.
– Towing the vehicle.
– Following a damage of the windshield close to the detection camera.
- Following a front bumper deformation, e.g. during parking (only for radar version).

The system is automatically deactivated if:
– A spare wheel with a too small diameter is detected or the seatbelt is unbuckled.
– A fault with the brake pedal switch or with the right or left brake light is detected.
– A fault in the sensors, in the electronic or in the brake system is detected.
– A severe crash (e.g. with airbag deployment) is detected.

In case the detection is degraded or temporarily unavailable by environment conditions, then a driver indication is not displayed (because a driver action is not requested).

It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lights are not in perfect working order.

The driver must not overload the vehicle (keep within the GVW limit and load height limits for roof bars).

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver if there is a risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, or with a pedestrian or cyclist.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

The trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.
The selected threshold is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

The threshold is set via the **Driving** touch screen menu.



▶ Select one of the three pre-defined thresholds: **"Far", "Normal"** or **"Close".**

Operation

Depending on the collision risk detected by the system and the alert trigger threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel.
The system takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the difference speed of the own vehicle and the object identified for the collision risk, and the operation of the vehicle (e.g. actions on the pedals, steering wheel) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.



(orange)

Level 1: visual alert only, warning that the preceding vehicle is very close.
The message **"Vehicle close"** is displayed.



(red)

Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning that a collision is imminent.
The message **"Brake!"** is displayed.

Level 3: a micro-braking may be given, confirming the risk of collision (optional).

While approaching a vehicle too quickly, the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: the level 1 alert depends on the trigger threshold selected. It reacts only on moving vehicles. It is disabled automatically at lower speed.

It is possible that collision warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

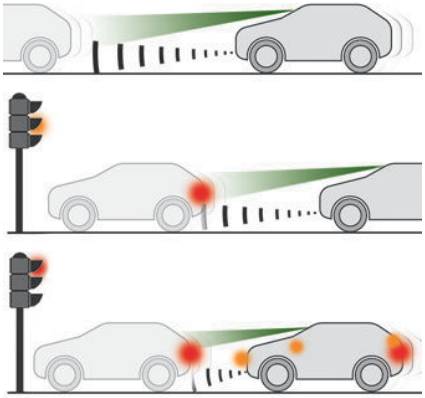
If you select "**Far**" in the touch screen, then the system warns sooner. This increases the safety but increases also the amount of alerts, if the legal safety distance is not kept.
To reduce the alert occurrence, you can change the setting to either of the other two.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA)

This function increases vehicle deceleration if the driver does not brake enough to avoid a collision.
This assistance is only provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.
The system performance may be degraded or not available by :
- Sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt
- Windscreen damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- damaged front bumper (or deformed in the past) or covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- front camera out of regular position or missing cover
- brake discs cooling process is on-going
- in curves
- system initialization process after battery disconnection
- sun or lights shining into the front camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. rain, fog or snow
- vehicle ahead creating road spray

The system performance may be affected by:
- vehicle stability system in progress
- by vehicle battery voltage out of range
- wet road reflecting lights
- close vehicles ahead
- tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called "automatic emergency braking", intervenes after the acoustic alert if the driver does not operate the brake pedal quickly enough.
The system aims at reducing the speed of impact or avoiding a collision if the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates in the following speed ranges:
– Between 3 mph and 53 mph (5 km/h and 85 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.
– Between 3 mph and 51 mph (5 km/h and 82 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
– Between 3 mph and 51 mph (5 km/h and 82 km/h) when a cyclist is detected (versions with camera and radar only).
– Between 3 mph or 87 mph (5 km/h or 140 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.

This warning lamp flashes (for approximately 10 seconds) as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes.

During the flashing time, the function is not available.
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, in the event of automatic emergency braking, keep the brake pedal depressed, also after a complete stop is reached, to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

The driver can override the automatic emergency braking at any time by strongly turning the steering wheel (evasive manoeuver) and/or by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.

The brake pedal may feel hard and vibrate slightly while the function is operating.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Malfunction

When a failure is detected in the sound module, the warning light appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by a display message.

No warning chime will sound, nor for the driver assistance system.

Please do not place your feet under the brake pedal.
During automatic emergency braking the brake pedal can move and let only a free-space of 5 cm below the brake pedal.

Activation/Deactivation

This warning light, lights up on the instrument panel, if the automatic braking system is reduced or degraded.
This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. This may be caused by a reduced visibility (e.g. rain, fog, snow, blinding by low sun) or by a real sensor blockage. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera or the front radar is covered by dirt, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



If these warning lights come on after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



These warning lights , light up on the instrument panel and/or in the warning light display for seat belts and front passenger airbag to indicate that the driver's and/or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on version). The automatic braking system is deactivated until the seat belts are fastened.

Active Emergency Braking (AEB)

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)
This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimising the braking pressure. It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen



The setting are changed via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen



The setting are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.



Deattivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

The system can only be deactivated at standstill above 10 to 3mph (5 km/h).

Vehicle Stability Assistance System

Traction Control System (TCS) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimizes traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.
If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.



These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning light flashing on the instrument panel).

Deactivation/Reactivation
In exceptional conditions (e.g. moving a vehicle that is bogged down in mud, stuck in snow, on loose soil), it may prove useful to deactivate the TCS system, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.

Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen



The TCS system is deactivated/ reactivated in the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen



The TCS system is deactivated/ reactivated in the **ADAS** touch screen application.



Deactivation of the ASR system is indicated by this indicator light on the instrument panel coming on and the display of a message.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light, lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

ASR/DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tires and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by dealers.
In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tires is recommended.
All four wheels must be fitted with tires approved for your vehicle.
All tire specifications are listed on the tire/paint label. For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The electronic stability control program includes the following systems:
– Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
– Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
– Post Collision Safety Brake (PCSB).
– Traction Control System (TCS).
– Dynamic stability control (DSC).

Post Collision Safety Brake (PCSB)

If an accident is detected, the vehicle initiates automatic post collision braking. The goal of this system is to reduce the risk of further collisions if the driver does not react.
The system is not operational if the capability of the vehicle to trigger and execute the automatic post collision braking is not available, as it can occur in destructive accidents or in other specific accident scenarios.
It is possible to override the automatic braking by pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Operating conditions

The system operates, if the following conditions are met:
– Airbags or pyrotechnic seat belt pretensioners have been deployed by the collision.
– Braking systems and electric functions remain continuously operational during and after collision.
– Driver has not depressed the brake or accelerator pedal.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, one of these warning lights will come on fixed on the instrument panel, accompanied by the Service warning light, the display of a message and an audio signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Braking Performance Assistance System

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD)

Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.

► **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

This warning light, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lights, accompanied by a message and an audio signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.

You must stop the vehicle.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

When changing wheels (tires and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

After an impact
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.
ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

The fixed illumination of this warning light signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

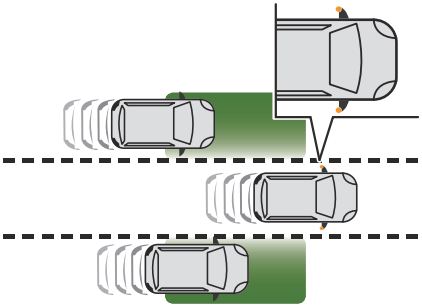
When changing wheels (tires and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

After an impact
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

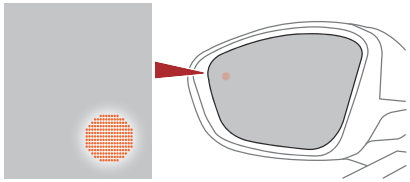
Visibility Enhancement Assistance System

Blind Spots Monitoring (BSM)

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This system warns the driver of a potential danger posed by the presence of another vehicle (car, lorry, motorcycle) in the vehicle's blind spots (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision) using sensors located on the sides of the bumpers.



A warning light appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
- **fixed**, immediately, when being overtaken.
- **flashing**, after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly, and when the direction indicator is used.

Activation/Deactivation
With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

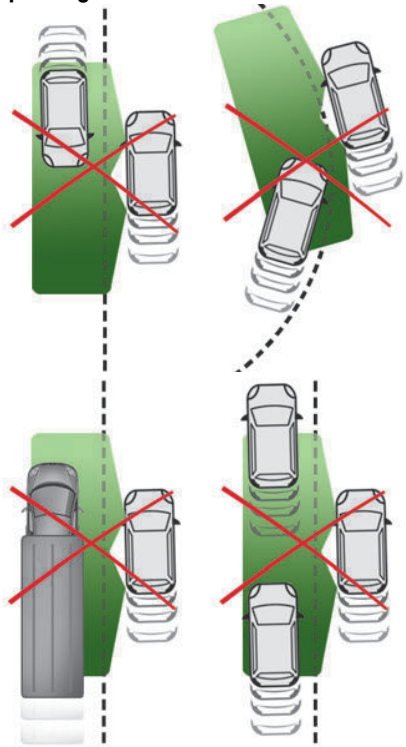
The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.

When starting the vehicle, the warning light comes on in each mirror to indicate that the system is activated.
The status of the system is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by manufacturer.

Operating conditions
– All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
– The speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h) (versions without Park Assist) or between 19 and 87 mph (30 and 140 km/h) (versions with Park Assist).
– When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 6 mph (10 km/h).
– When overtaken by a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 16 mph (25 km/h).
– Traffic is flowing normally.
– Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.
– You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
– Your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.

Operating limits



No alert is triggered in the following conditions:
– presence of stationary objects (e.g. parked vehicles, safety rails, lampposts, signs).
– vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.
– on winding roads or in case of sharp turns.
– when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (e.g. truck, bus), which is both detected in a blind spot from behind and present in the driver's field of vision from the front.
– quick overtaking manoeuvre.
– very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.
– activation of the Park Assist function.

Malfunction

If the event of a malfunction, this warning light ,lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The system may be temporarily disturbed by certain weather conditions (e.g. rain, hail).
In particular, driving on a wet road or going from a dry to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. presence of a cloud of water droplets in the blind spot interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors, or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the system.

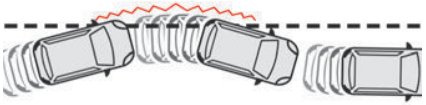
Lane Centering Assistance System

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

Due to legal requirements,the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The system corrects the vehicle's trajectory by alerting the driver as soon as it detects a risk of involuntary lane departure or crossing of a verge or hard shoulder (depending on version). To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windshield, identifying the lane markings on the ground and the side of the road (depending on version).
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Operating conditions
– Vehicle speed between 40 and 112 mph (65 and 180 km/h).
– Road marked with a central dividing line.
– Steering wheel held in both hands.
– Direction indicators not activated.
– ESC system activated and operational.

The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking. The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

Operation
As soon as the system identifies a risk of involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected on the ground or a lane boundary (e.g. grass verge), it performs the trajectory correction necessary to restore the vehicle to its original lane.The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning light flashes during trajectory correction.

The driver can prevent the correction by firmly holding the steering wheel (e.g. during an emergency manoeuvre). The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.

While the direction indicators are activated and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that a change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.

Driving situations and related alerts

The system will inform the driver with a message and a chime if there is an ongoing correction for more than 10 s. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time.
The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations.
The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Function status	Display	Comments
ON		Function deactivated.
ON	None.	System active, conditions not met: – Speed below 40 mph (65 km/h). – No lane marking recognised. – ESC operation triggered. – "Sporty" driving.
ON		Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel supplied with the vehicle, failure).
ON	None.	Lane marking detected. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of line crossing is detected. The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
ON	 **"Hold the steering wheel" or "Stay in lane"** (depending on version)	If, while correcting the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line will be crossed: the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory adjustment. If the steering wheel is not held properly, an audio warning sounds, accompanied by a message, until the trajectory correction is completed or the driver has grasped the steering wheel correctly. The duration of audio warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:
– ESC deactivated or operation triggered.
– Speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h).
– Electrical connection to a trailer.
– Use of a"space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended).
– Dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
– Driving over lane markings.
– Activation of the direction indicators.
– Crossing the inside line on a bend.
– Driving on a tight bend.
– Inactivity by the driver detected during correction.
– Narrow lane detected.
- Driving in havy curves and construction areas.

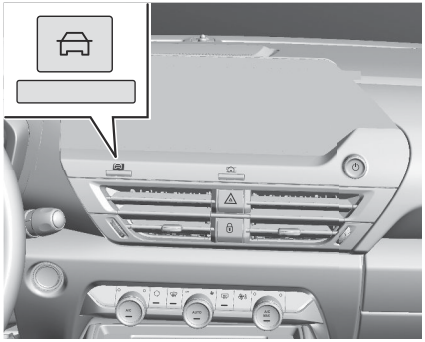
The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– Insufficient contrast between the road surface and the verge or hard shoulder (e.g. shade).
– Lane markings worn, hidden (e.g. snow, mud) or multiple (e.g. roadworks).
– Close proximity to the vehicle in front (lane markings may not be detected).
– Roads that are narrow, winding.

Depending on version, only lane departure warning system is active, when a system fault is present, a spare wheel used, Electronic Stability Control is not activated or e.g a trailer is attached.

Risk of undesirable operation
The system should be deactivated in the following situations:
– When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
– Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
– Road in poor condition, unstable or with very poor grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
– Adverse weather conditions.
– Driving on racing circuits.
– Driving on a rolling road.

Deactivation/Activation
The system shall be deactivated by the driver when the vehicle is being towed.
By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

With the dashboard button



► Press and hold this button to deactivate or press briefly to reactivate the system at any time.

Deactivation is signalled by the lighting of the indicator light in the button and this warning light in the instrument panel.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application or via the **Shortcuts for driving aids**.

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator light on the instrument panel.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

When a failure is detected in the sound module, the warning light appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by a display message.
No warning chime will sound, nor fot the drive assistance system.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fault

This symbol appears in the Driver Information Center in the event of a fault, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.



This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message**"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"**if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera or the front radar is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

Due to legal requirements,the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization until the next time the ignition is reactivated.The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

The lane departure warning system supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle approaches a road edge or a lane marking, the system warns the driver.
Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.
No warning will be issued with a dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or heavy steering.
The system will inform the driver with a message and a chime if there is an ongoing correction for more than 10 s. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time.



When the system recognises an unintended lane departure, the control indicator flashes yellow.

Operating conditions

For a correct operation of the system, the following preconditions have to be fulfilled:

- Vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h and 180 km/h
- The turn lights are not activated
- No dynamic driving i.e. Pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- Lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- The vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- No system fault is present which prevents corrections

Activation/Deactivation

The system shall be deactivated by the driver when the vehicle is being towed.

Activation

If the system is activated, the LED in the button is not illuminated.
To activated the system, press the button.
Depending on version, the system is automatically reactivated at the next vehicle start.

Deactivation



To deactivate the system, press and hold. The LED in the button is illuminated and illuminates yellow in the instrument panel.

Operation limitations

The system performance may be affected by:

- Covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- Close vehicles ahead
- Banked roads
- Widing or hilly roads
- Poor lighthing conditions
- Sudden lighting changes
- Shining sun directly into the camera lens
- Adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog or snow
- Vehicle modifications e.g. tires
- Roads with poor lane markings
- Heavy curves and construction areas

Malfunction

If the event of a malfunction, this warning light ,lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

When a failure is detected in the sound module, the warning light appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by a display message.
No warning chime will sound, nor fot the drive assistance system.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fault

This symbol appears in the Driver Information Center in the event of a fault, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message**"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"**if the sensor is masked.

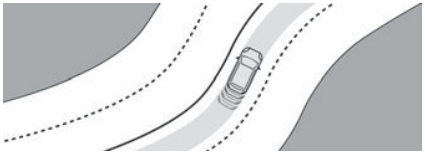
This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.

In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera or the front radar is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Lane Positioning Assist (LPA)

Due to legal requirements,the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization until the next time the ignition is reactivated.The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



The system identifies the edges of the traffic lane and steers the vehicle to keep it inside this lane and maintain the lateral position chosen by the driver.
To do this, the system uses a camera placed on the upper part of the windshield.
This system is particularly suited to driving on motorways and main roads.

Activation/Deactivation
The Lane positioning assistsystem is automatically activated, after selecting Highway Driver Assist mode.

For more information on the **Highway Driver Assist** system, refer to the corresponding section.
The selection is confirmed by the display of the symbols on the instrument panel or on the head-up display (if fitted), representing the steering wheel and the side lines.
The colour of the symbols depends on the operating state of the system:

(grey) One or more operating conditions is not met; the system is paused.

(green) All operating conditions are met; the system is active.

(orange) System malfunction.

If the driver no longer wishes to use the system for some time, they can deactivate it by pressing the button again (confirmed when the symbol disappears).

The system status is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Operating conditions
- Adaptive cruise control active.
- ESC system operational.
- ASR system activated.
- No trailer detected.
- No 'space-saver' spare wheel in use.
- Vehicle not subject to strong lateral g-forces.
- Direction indicators not activated.

Regulation
The driver must hold the steering wheel properly.
When regulation is activated, the symbols are displayed in green: with small steering inputs, the system steers the vehicle and keeps it in the position chosen by the driver in the traffic lane.
This position is not necessarily the centre of the lane.
The driver can feel movements in the steering wheel.
At any time, the driver can change the position of the vehicle by intervening on the steering wheel and maintaining the position until the system has taken it into account. If the chosen position is too off-centre, an automatic re-centering manoeuvre can occur. The system adjusts to the newly defined position.

Pausing/Suspending the system

The driver must act promptly if they believe that the traffic conditions or the state of the road surface require their intervention, by moving the steering wheel to temporarily suspend system operation. Any intervention on the brake pedal that causes the Adaptive cruise control to pause will also cause the system to pause.

If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts and then deactivates itself if there is no response from the driver.

If the function is suspended due to the prolonged release of the force holding the steering wheel, the function must be reactivated by pressing the button again.

Automatic suspension
– Triggering of the ESC system.
– Insufficient lane detection. In this case, the Lane keeping assist function can take over, and the system will reactivate itself once the operating conditions are met again.

Paused by the driver
– Travelling outside the lane limits.
– Too tight a grip on the steering wheel or dynamic action on the steering wheel.
– Action on the brake pedal (resulting in a pause until cruise control is reactivated) or accelerator pedal (suspension for as long as the pedal is depressed).
– Pausing of the Adaptive cruise control system.
– Deactivation of the ASR system.

Driving situations and related alerts
The tables below describe the displays associated with the main driving situations. The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.
The locations of these symbols vary according to the display mode selected on the instrument panel and whether or not the head-up display is activated (if fitted to vehicle).

Symbols	Comments
 (grey)/(grey)	Cruise control paused. Lane positioning assist not selected.
	Cruise control on.
(green) /(green)	Lane positioning assist not selected.
 (green)/(green)	Highway Driver Assist system activated. Lane positioning assist is operating normally (steering wheel correction active).
 (grey) /(grey)	Highway Driver Assist system paused by the driver.
 (green)/(grey)	Highway Driver Assist system activated. All the operating conditions for lane positioning assist have not been met.
 (grey)/(grey)	Highway Driver Assist system suspended. Cruise control and lane positioning assist are suspended.

Messages	Driving situations
"Keep your hands on the steering wheel"	Prolonged driving without holding the steering wheel, holding it improperly or without applying any force.
"Hold the steering wheel"	Actual or imminent loss of lane positioning assist.
"Take back control"	Simultaneous loss of cruise control and lane positioning assist.

Operating limits

The system may issue an alert when the vehicle is travelling on a long, straight road with smooth road surface even if the driver thinks they are holding the steering wheel correctly.

The system may not operate or may produce unsuitable corrections to the steering in the following situations:
– Poor visibility (insufficient road lighting, snowfall, rain, fog).
– Dazzle (headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade).
– Windshield area in front of the camera dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker.
– Lane markings eroded, partially hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, surface joints).
– Travelling in a tight bend.
– Winding roads.
– Presence of a tarmac joint on the road.

Risk of undesirable operation

The system should be deactivated in the following situations:
– Driving with a "space-saver" type spare wheel.
– When towing or with a bicycle carrier attached to a towing device, particularly when
a trailer is not connected or the trailer is not an approved type.
– Adverse weather conditions.
– Driving on slippery road surfaces (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
– In roadworks or toll booth areas.
– Driving on racing circuits.
– Driving on a rolling road.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, the Service warning light comes on and this (orange) symbol appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System

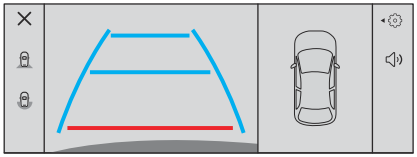
6

Surround Vision

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen
Top Rear Vision

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

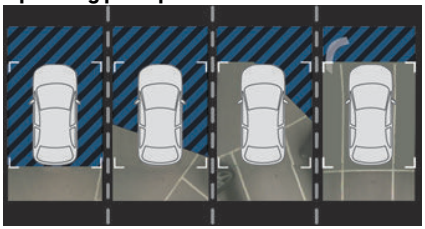
When reverse gear is engaged, with the engine running, this system displays views of the vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using a camera located at the rear of the vehicle.



The screen is divided into 3 parts with a side menu, a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information in the view from above the vehicle.
Different contextual views are available:
– Automatic zoom view.
– Standard view.
– Panoramic view.
Depending on the context, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or automatic zoom).

The view type can be changed at any time during the manoeuvre.
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Operating principle



Using the camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during low speed manoeuvres.
An image from above the vehicle in its close surroundings is created in real time (on the side of the screen), as the vehicle progresses.
This view makes it easier to align the vehicle when parking and to perceive nearby obstacles.
It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.
An additional jet is fitted above the number plate to clean the reversing camera (depending on version).

► The washing of the reversing camera is triggered by operating the rear screenwash.

Settings

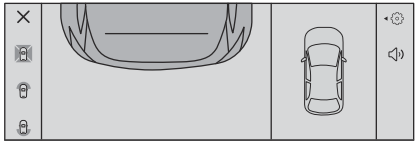
In the side menu, this menu allows you to carry out the following operations:

- adjust the volume of the audio signal.
- adjust the brightness.
- adjust the contrast.

Activation/Deactivation

To activate the camera, engage reverse gear.
The system is deactivated:
- when changing out of reverse gear.
- by pressing the cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

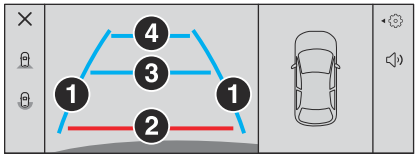
Automatic zoom view



The rear camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its close surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around nearby obstacles.
Using the sensors located on the rear bumper, the automatic zoom view is displayed when approaching an obstacle at the red line (less than 30 cm) during the manoeuvre.
This view is only available automatically.

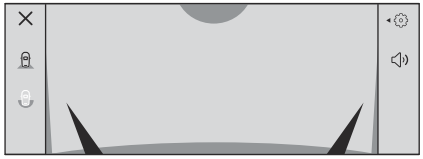
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.
The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available automatically or by selection in the side menu.

Panoramic view

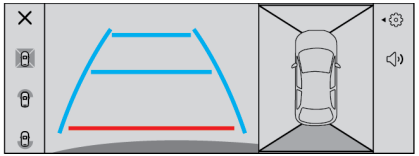


The panoramic view allows you to leave, in reverse, a parking space by anticipating the arrival of vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
This view is only available by selection in the side menu.

360 Vision

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

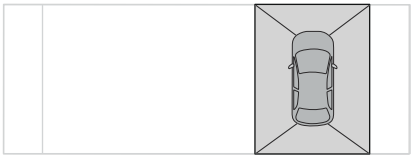
This system allows you to view your vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using cameras, located at the front and rear of the vehicle.



The screen is divided into 4 parts with two side menus, a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information in the view from above the vehicle.
Depending on the view angle chosen in the left-hand side menu, the system provides specific visual assistance in particular driving conditions, such as entering a blind intersection or manoeuvring in areas with reduced visibility.
Different contextual views are available for the rear or for the front:
– Automatic zoom view.
– Standard view.
– Panoramic view.
Depending on the context, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or automatic zoom).
The view type can be changed at any time during the manoeuvre.
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Operating principle
Reconstructed view
The cameras are activated and a reconstruction of a view from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is displayed on the touch screen.

Live view



The front and rear views automatically appear in the view from above the vehicle.
It is also possible to display any live view by selecting the corresponding zone.
The front view can be selected in forward gear up to 10 mph (16 km/h).

Installing the very cold climate screen can alter the image transmitted by the front camera.

An additional jet is fitted above the number plate to clean the reversing camera (depending on version).

▶ The washing of the reversing camera is triggered by operating the rear screenwash.

Settings

In the side menu, this menu allows you to carry out the following operations:

– adjust the volume of the audio signal.
– adjust the brightness.
– adjust the contrast.

Activation/Deactivation
Automatic
With the rear camera, engine running and vehicle stationary, rear vision is displayed automatically if reverse gear is engaged.

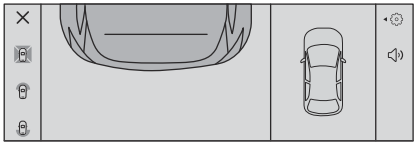
With the front camera, engine running and speed below 10 mph (16 km/h), front vision is displayed automatically if a gear is engaged.

Manual

▶ In the **ADAS** touch screen application, select **Functions>Panoramic Camera.**

The system is deactivated:
– automatically for the rear, when changing out of reverse gear.
– automatically for the front, above approximately 10 mph (16 km/h).
– by pressing the cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

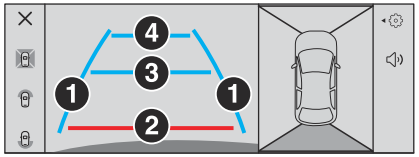
Automatic zoom view



The front or rear camera records the surroundings during the manoeuvre to create a front or rear view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings, making it possible to manoeuvre the vehicle around the surrounding obstacles.
Using the sensors located on the front or rear bumper, the automatic zoom view is displayed when approaching an obstacle at the red line (less than 30 cm) during the manoeuvre.
This view is only available automatically.
Depending on version, it can be activated/deactivated in the **ADAS** application of the touch screen.

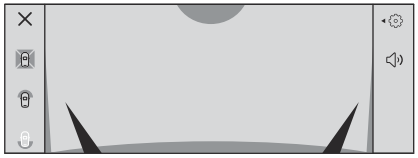
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

Standard view



Depending on the context, the area behind or in front of your vehicle is displayed on the screen.
The blue lines (at the rear)/orange lines (at the front) **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear or front bumper; the two blue lines (at the rear)/orange lines (at the front) **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m respectively.
This view is available automatically or by selection in the left-hand side menu.

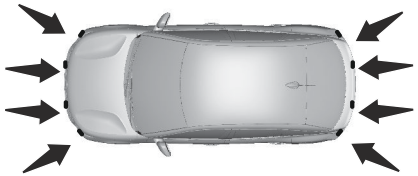
Panoramic view



The rear or front panoramic view allows you to leave a parking space by anticipating the arrival of vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
This view is only available by selection in the lefthand side menu.

Parking sensors

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



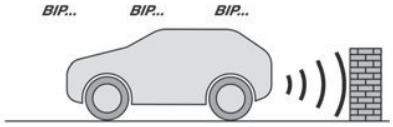
This system detects and signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) using sensors located in the bumper.

Rear parking sensors
System startup is available when reverse gear is engaged.
It is indicated by an audio confirmation signal and a display indication.

If an obstacle is detected as soon as the reverse gear is engaged, an audio detection signal is given directly instead of the audio confirmation signal.

If no audio signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Audio assistance

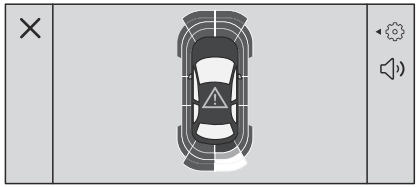


The system signals the presence of obstacles which are both within the sensors' detection zone and in the vehicle path defined by the direction of the steering wheel.
The proximity information is given by an intermittent audio signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audio signal becomes continuous.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

Adjusting the audio signal (With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen)

Pressing this button opens the window for adjusting the volume of the audio signal.

Visual assistance



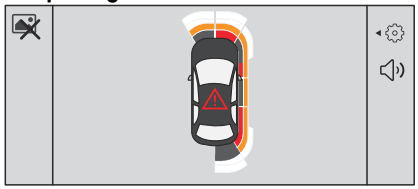
This supplements the audio signal, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen that represent the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant, orange: close, red: very close).
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

Supplementing the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
Front parking sensor operation is suspended if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle relative to the vehicle, in front or behind it.

Side parking sensors



Using four additional sensors located on the sides of the bumpers, the system records the position of obstacles during the manoeuvre and indicates them when they are located alongside the vehicle.

Only fixed obstacles are indicated correctly. Moving obstacles detected at the beginning of the manoeuvre may be indicated mistakenly, while moving obstacles that appear alongside the vehicle but were not previously recorded will not be indicated.

Objects memorised during the manoeuvre will no longer be stored after switching off the ignition.

Deactivation/Activation

(Depending on country of sale)

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.

If the function is deactivated, this indicator light, lights up on the instrument panel.

The system status is saved when the ignition is switched off.



The rear parking sensors are deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the **Park Assist** function is measuring a space.
For more information on the Park Assist function, refer to the corresponding section.

When starting the vehicle, the graphic and audio aids are only available after the touch screen has started up.

Operating limits

If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.

Malfunction

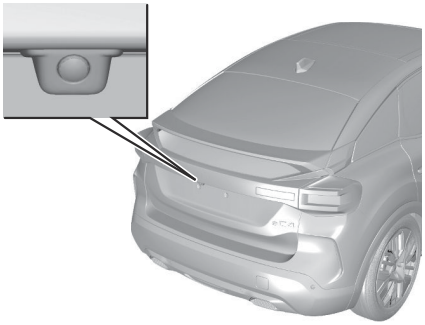


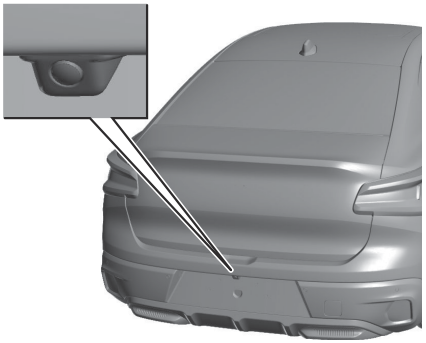
In the event of a malfunction when changing into reverse gear, these warning lights light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal (short beep)

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

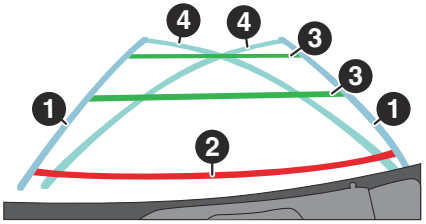
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**





The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
The image is displayed on the touch screen.

The reversing camera function may be supplemented by the parking sensors.



The blue lines **1** indicate the general direction of the vehicle (the gap corresponds to the width of your vehicle including the mirrors).
The red line **2** represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The green lines **3** represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper. The turquoise curves **4** show the maximum turning angle in either direction.

C4
Opening the tailgate causes the display to disappear.

Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

Driver's Attention Assistance System

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The function comprises the "Driver Attention Warning" system combined with the "Driver Attention Warning by Camera" system.

These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.
Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

These systems reset themselves if one of the following conditions is met:
– The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
– The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

Activation/Deactivation
By default, the function is automatically activated at every engine start.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.

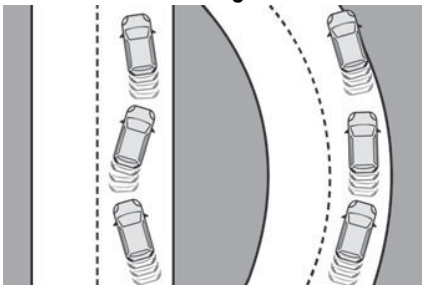
Coffee Break Alert

The system triggers an alert when it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 43 mph (70 km/h).

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging the driver to take a break, accompanied by an audio signal.
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.
The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:
– With the engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes.
– The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
– The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 43 mph (70 km/h), the system goes into standby.
Driving time starts being counted again once the speed reaches above 43 mph (70 km/h).

Driver Attention Warning



The system assesses the driver's level of alertness, fatigue and distraction by identifying trajectory changes in relation to the lane markings.

To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windshield and a camera placed on the steering wheel column.
This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 43 mph (70 km/h)).
At a first alert level, the driver is warned by the message **"Caution!"**, accompanied by an audio signal.
After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message **"Driving at risk: Take a break"**, accompanied by a more pronounced audio signal.

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– Lane positioning assist is active.
– poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall).
– dazzle (e.g. headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light).
– windscreen area located in front of the camera (e.g. dirty, misted, frost-covered, snowcovered, damaged or masked by a sticker).
– lane markings absent, worn, hidden (e.g. snow, mud, dead leaves) or multiple (roadworks).
– close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected).
– roads that are narrow, winding.

Risk of undesirable operation
The system should be deactivated in the following situations:
– When a "space-saver" spare wheel is fitted.
– When the vehicle is towed.
– Driving on off-road.
– Driving on racing circuits.

Deactivation/Activation
By default, the function is automatically activated at every engine start.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen



The settings are changed via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen



The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Driver Attention Warning/Safety mode

If the driver's drowsiness is detected, the Lane keeping assist and Active Safety Brake systems are automatically reactivated (if they have been deactivated by the driver in the **ADAS** touch screen application) and the Collision Risk Alert function trigger threshold is set to its most sensitive value.
It is recommended to deactivate distraction detection in the **ADAS** touch screen application in the same cases as those for which it is recommended to deactivate the Lane keeping assist and Active Safety Brake systems.

Malfunction



This warning light, lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Audio Warning System fault: Repair needed"** if the audio warning system

is in failure.
The system may be disturbed or unavailable.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light, lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio

signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning light, lights up on the instrument panel with the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**" if the

sensor is masked. This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.

Speed Control Assistance System

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving.
In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles
to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.
Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated. If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly.
When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed.
On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

Exceeding the programmed speed setting

You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).
To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when the set speed is reached again, the displayed speed stops flashing).

Operating limits
Never use the system in the following situations:
– In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
– In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
– On winding or steep roads.
– On slippery or flooded roads.
– In poor weather conditions.
– In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
– Driving on a speed circuit.
– Driving on a rolling road.
– When using a 'space-saver' type spare wheel.
– When using snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tires.

Cruise Control

Cruise control - Specific recommendations

The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving.
In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.
Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated. If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly.
When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed.
On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

Exceeding the programmed speed setting
You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).
To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when the set speed is reached again, the displayed speed stops flashing).

Operating limits
Never use the system in the following situations:
– In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
– In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
– On winding or steep roads.
– On slippery or flooded roads.
– In poor weather conditions.
– In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
– Driving on a speed circuit.
– Driving on a rolling road.
– When using a 'space-saver' type spare wheel.
– When using snow chains or non-slip cover, snon-slip covers or studded tires.

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids and the Specific recommendations on cruise control.**

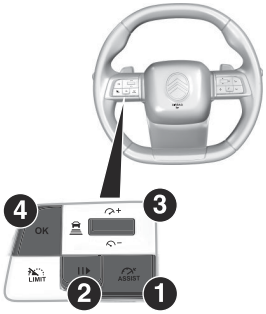


This system automatically maintains the vehicle's speed at the value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without the use of the accelerator pedal.
Cruise control is switched on manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.
With a drive selector, mode **D** or **B** must be engaged.

Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with the Stop & Start function.

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

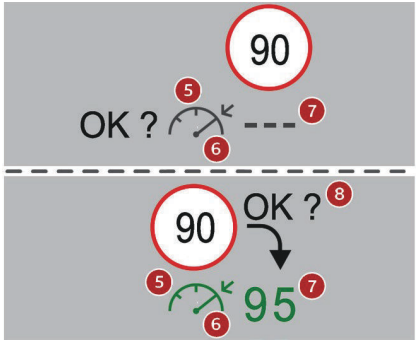
Steering-mounted controls



1. Cruise control selection
2. Switch on/pause cruise control at the previously saved speed setting
3. Increase/Decrease the speed setting (if cruise control activated)
   Activation of cruise control in progress (if cruise control deactivated)
4. Activation of cruise control in progress
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition

For more information on the **Road signs recognition** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



5. Cruise control mode selection indication
6. Cruise control on (green)/pause (grey) indication
7. Speed setting value
8. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (depending on version)

Switching on/pausing

- Press button **1** to select the cruise control mode; the function is paused (grey).
- Press **3** upwards/downwards, or press **4-OK** to activate the cruise control and save a speed setting as soon as the vehicle speed reaches the desired level (green).
- Pressing button **2-I I>** temporarily pauses the function.
- Pressing **2-I I>** or **4-OK** again will reactivate cruise control (green).

Cruise control operation is also temporarily interrupted (pause):

- by pressing the brake pedal
- automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered
- by shifting to neutral or engaging reverse gear
- by depressing the clutch pedal for more than 5 seconds
- by using the electric parking brake

Modifying the speed setting

The cruise control must be active.
To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

- For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses upwards/downwards on **3** to increase/decrease.
- For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold upwards/downwards on 3 to increase/decrease.

Prolonged pressing and holding upwards/downwards on **3** causes a very rapid change in vehicle speed.

As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To change the speed setting using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition displayed on the instrument panel:
– When passing the sign:

► Press 4-OK to save the suggested speed.

This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.
– After passing the sign:

► Press **4-OK**. The message **"OK?"** is displayed to confirm the request to save.

► Press **4-OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

Off

► Press **1**: the cruise control information display disappears.

Malfunction
In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Adaptive cruise control

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids and the Specific recommendations on cruise control.**

This system automatically maintains the vehicle speed at a value set by the driver (speed setting), while respecting a safety distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle) previously set by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.
With the **Stop function**, the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.
With the **Stop & Go function**, the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop and restarts the vehicle.

The brake lights come on if the vehicle is slowed down by the system.
It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lights are not in perfect working order.

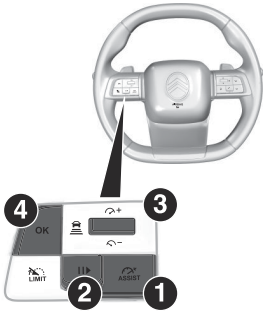


To do this, the system uses a camera fitted at the top of the windshield and, depending on version, a radar fitted in the front bumper.

Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

If the driver activates the direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, cruise control may temporarily reduce the distance to the target vehicle to facilitate overtaking, without exceeding the speed setting.

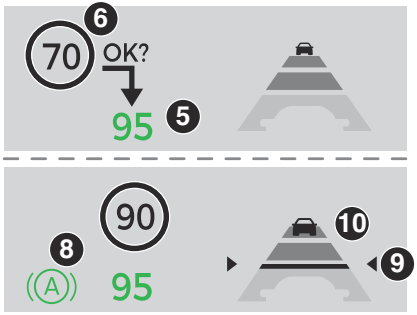
Steering-mounted controls



1. Selection/deselection of cruise control only or Highway Driver Assist (depending on version)
2. Switch on/pause cruise control at the previously saved speed setting
   Confirmation of vehicle restart after automatic stop (version with Stop & Go function)
3. Increase/Decrease the speed setting (if cruise control activated)
   Activation of cruise control in progress (if cruise control deactivated)
   Display and configuration of the inter-vehicle distance setting
4. Activation of cruise control in progress
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function

For more information on the **Road signs recognition** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



5. Speed setting value
6. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function
7. Vehicle held stationary (version with Stop&Go function)
8. Inter-vehicle distance setting
9. Position of the vehicle detected by the system

Use

Selecting the system

► With the engine running, press **1-ASSIST** to select cruise control mode.

Switching on cruise control

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, your speed must be between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h).
System activation is also subject to the following conditions:
– driver's door closed.
– driver's seat belt fastened.
– mode **D** selected on the automatic gearbox.
– parking brake released.
– if the vehicle is stationary, brake pedal depressed.

► Press **3** or **4-OK**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 19 mph (30 km/h)) and cruise control is immediately activated (green display).

Modifying the speed setting

To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

► For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses upwards/ downwards on 3 to increase/decrease.

► For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold upwards/downwards on **3** to increase/ decrease.

Prolonged pressing and holding upwards/ downwards on **3** causes a very rapid change in vehicle speed.

To change the speed setting using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function and displayed on the instrument panel:
– When passing the sign:

► Press **4-OK** to save the suggested speed.

This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.
– After passing the sign:

► Press **4-OK.** The message **"OK?"** is displayed to confirm the request to save.

► Press **4-OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

Pausing/resumption of cruise control

► Press **2-I I>** or depress the brake pedal. The symbol turns grey.

Cruise control may also have been paused:
– automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.
– by shifting to neutral or engaging reverse gear.
– by using the electric parking brake.
– by unfastening the seat belt.
– by opening the driver's door.

► Press **2-I I>** or **4-OK** to reactivate cruise control.

With a gearbox or a drive selector, following braking that has brought the vehicle to a complete stop, if the traffic conditions do not allow the vehicle to begin moving again within 3 seconds of stopping, press **2-I I>** or the accelerator pedal to move off.

Cruise control remains active following a gear change.

When cruise control is paused and the driver tries to reactivate it, the message "**Activation not possible, conditions not met**" is temporarily displayed if reactivation is impossible (required conditions not met).

Changing the programmed speed setting with the Road signs recognition function

► Press **4-OK** to accept the speed suggested by the function on the instrument panel, then press again to confirm.

If the selected speed is far from the current vehicle speed, a strong acceleration or deceleration is felt.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance

► Press 3 to display the distance setting thresholds **("Distant", "Normal" or "Close")**, then make successive short presses upwards/ downwards to select a threshold.

After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorised when the ignition is switched off.
The driver must keep a sufficient safety distance from the vehicle in front.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Depress the accelerator pedal. The system is suspended as long as the acceleration is maintained.

Deselecting the system

► Press **1-ASSIST** until the symbols disappear from the instrument panel.

Messages and alerts

The actual order of display of the messages or alerts may be different.



(grey symbol)
Cruise control selected, but cannot be activated.
All the operating conditions have not been met.



(grey symbol)
Cruise control selected, awaiting activation.
All the operating conditions are met.



(grey symbol)
Cruise control paused, but cannot be reactivated.
All the operating conditions have not been met.



(green symbol)
Cruise control active, vehicle detected.



(green symbol)
Cruise control suspended, following brief acceleration by the driver.



(orange)
"Take control"

► Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.



(red)
"Take control"

► **Take back control of the vehicle immediately**: the system cannot manage the current driving situation.



"Activation refused, conditions unsuitable"

The system refuses to activate cruise control, as the necessary conditions are not fulfilled.

Stop & Go function



(green symbols)
"Cruise paused" (for a few seconds).

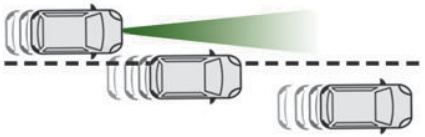
The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop. The symbol "**I I**" is displayed.
Within 3 seconds of stopping, the vehicle gradually and automatically begins moving again.
Beyond 3 seconds of stopping, the driver must accelerate or press **2-I I>** to move off.

If the driver takes no action after the vehicle has been stopped, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.

While the vehicle is immobilised, the following recommendations apply:
– The driver should not leave the vehicle.
– Do not open the boot.
– Do not drop off or pick up passengers.
– Do not engage reverse gear.

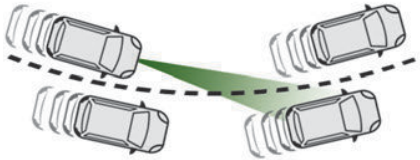
When restarting the vehicle, beware of cyclists, pedestrians or animals who are not taken into account by the system.
The driver must monitor their surroundings.

Operating limits
Cruise control operates by day and night, in dry weather or moderate rainfall.
Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require driver intervention.
Cases not taken into account by the system:
– Pedestrians, cyclists, animals.
– Stationary vehicles (e.g. traffic jams, breakdown).



– Vehicles crossing your lane.
– Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

Situations where the driver must suspend the system:



– Vehicles in a tight bend.
– When approaching a roundabout.

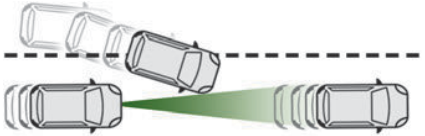


– When following a narrow vehicle.

Reactivate the system when conditions allow.

Situations in which the driver is prompted to immediately resume control:

– Excessively sharp deceleration by the vehicle in front of you.



– When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

Some vehicles on the road may be poorly perceived or interpreted by the camera and/or the radar (e.g. truck), which can lead to an incorrect evaluation of distances and result in inappropriate acceleration or braking of the vehicle.

Pay particular attention:
– When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered across the traffic lane.
– When entering a tunnel or crossing a bridge.

If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:
– Following an impact on the windshield close to the camera or on the front bumper (versions with radar).
– Brake lights not working.

If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the system:
– Carrying long objects on roof bars.
– Towing.
– Front end of the vehicle modified (for example by adding long-range headlights or painting the front bumper).
– Obstructed radar and/or camera.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed instead of the speed setting.

This warning light comes on, accompanied by a message and an audio signal, to confirm the malfunction.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Intelligent Speed Adaptation

Only available on versions with the automatic gearbox and drive selector.

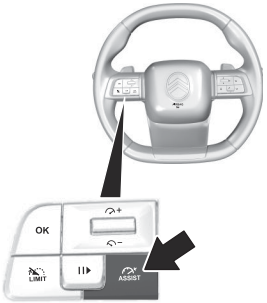
This system automatically adjusts the speed and corrects the trajectory of the vehicle, using Adaptive cruise control with Stop&Go function in conjunction with Lane Positioning Assist. These two functions must be activated and in operation.

For more information on **Adaptive cruise** control and **Lane Positioning Assist**, refer to the corresponding sections.

The system assists the driver by acting on the steering, acceleration and braking within the physical limits and capacities of the vehicle. Certain road infrastructure elements or vehicles in the surroundings may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and radar, resulting in an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of acceleration or braking.

Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

Selecting/Deselecting the system



- Press this button successively until the Highway Driver Assist mode is displayed on the instrument panel.
- After a few seconds, the Highway Driver Assist mode is selected. The Driving aids miniview is displayed on the instrument panel.



The colour of the symbols, representing the steering wheel and the side lines, depends on the operating state of the system:



(grey)
One or more operating conditions is not met; the system is paused.



(green)
All operating conditions are met; the system is active.



(orange)
System malfunction.

- Press this button successively again until the **OFF** mode is displayed on the instrument panel.
- After a few seconds, the Highway Driver Assist mode is deselected. The Driving aids mini-view disappears.

Speed Limiter

For more information, refer to the General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.



This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).

The speed limiter is switched on manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).
The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

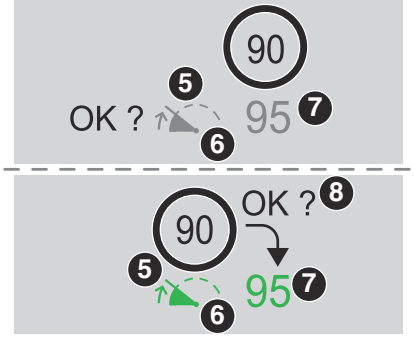
Steering-mounted controls



1. Speed limiter selection
2. Switch on/pause the speed limiter at the previously saved speed setting
3. Increase/Decrease the speed setting
4. Activate the speed limiter at the previously saved speed setting
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function

For more information on the **Road signs recognition** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



5. Speed limiter mode selection indication
6. Speed limiter on (green)/pause (grey) indication
7. Speed setting value
8. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (depending on version)

Switching on/Pausing

- With the engine running,press **1-LIMIT** to select the speed limiter mode; the function is paused (grey).
- If the limit speed setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the

system), press **2-I I>** or **4-OK** to switch the speed limiter on (green).

▶ Pressing **2-I I>** again temporarily pauses the function.

When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audio warning is emitted.

Adjusting the speed setting
You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.
To change the speed setting:

▶ For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses upwards/downwards on 3 to increase/decrease.

▶ For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold upwards/downwards on 3 to increase/decrease.

To modify the cruise speed setting based on the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition, as shown on the instrument panel:
– When passing the sign:

▶ Press **4-OK** to save the suggested speed.

This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.
– After passing the sign:

▶ Press **4-OK**. The message “OK?" is displayed to confirm the request to save.

▶ Press **4-OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

▶ Fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The speed limiter is temporarily deactivated and the displayed speed setting flashes.

▶ Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the speed setting.

When exceeding the speed is not due to the driver's action (e.g. in case of a steep slope), an audio signal is triggered immediately.

On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting.
If necessary, apply the brakes to control your vehicle’s speed.

When exceeding the speed for a prolonged time period, an audio signal is triggered.
Off

▶ Press 1-LIMIT: the speed limiter information display disappears.

▶ Turn the engine off.

Malfunction
In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System

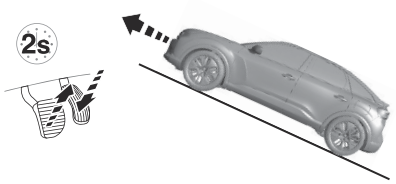
Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
The system is only active when:
– The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
– Certain slope conditions are met.
– The driver’s door is closed.

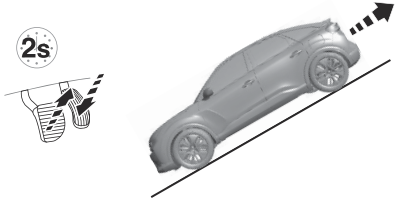
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.
If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator light and the P indicator light in the electric parking brake control are on fixed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:
- If mode **D** or **M** is selected on an automatic gearbox.
– If mode **D** or **B** is selected on the drive selector.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal.

Malfunction



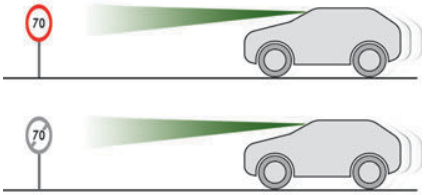
If the event of a malfunction, these warning lights, light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Utility Features Assistance System

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

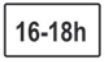


This system displays the maximum speed authorised locally on the instrument panel, using:
– Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
– Speed limit information from the navigation system's mapping.
– Signs indicating a shared traffic zone detected by the camera.

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
Entry into a shared traffic zone Example: 	**Without 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen** 12 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units on the instrument panel) **With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen** Display of the speed in force in the country you are driving in.

– Some supplementary traffic signs detected by the camera.

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit when raining Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit when towing 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Example: 	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit when raining Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit when towing 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Example: 	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit for vehicles with a gross vehicle weight or gross train weight less than 3.5 tonnes 	56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit in case of snow Example: 	If the outside temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol
Speed limit at certain times of the day Example: 	19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "clock" symbol

Activation/Deactivation

To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing.
Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time.
This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the connected services.

On-board navigation mapping should be regularly updated in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
This should be taken into account to ensure you observe the speed limit.
For the system to work properly when changing countries, the speed unit of the instrument panel must match that of the country you are driving in.

Automatic sign reading is a driving aid system and does not always display the correct speed limits.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit on the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Activation/Deactivation
By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication
2. End of speed limit indication (depending on version)



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information or the speed information is currently unknown.



On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value, accompanied by an audio signal.
The audio signal can be deactivated in the ADAS touch screen menu.



For a suggested maximum speed, the first time that the vehicle exceeds it by more than 2 mph (3 km/h) (e.g. 59 mph (95 km/h)), the speed is displayed and flashes for 10 seconds (depending on version).

Operating limits
The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:
– Atmospheric pollution.
– Towing.
– Driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted.
– Tire repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit.
– Young drivers.
The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:
– Road signs that are obstructed, non-standard, damaged or bent.
– Obsolete or incorrect maps.

Settings
Deactivation/Activation
By default, the overspeed alert sound is automatically activated at every engine start.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the Driving touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.

The system cannot be deactivated.The speed limit change sound is saved when the ignition is switched off.

In the event of the overspeed alert sound deactivation, this warning light, lights up a few seconds on the instrument panel.

Country selection
The list of detected road signs can be updated by selecting a specific country.

- In the **Driving** touch screen menu, select **Security>Panels Detection>Country settings.**

- In the **Select Country** list, select the desired country.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

- In the **Driving** touch screen menu, select **Driving Functions>Country** settings.

- In the Select **Country** list, select the desired country.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

- In the **ADAS** touch screen application, select **Functions>Road Signs>Country** setting.

- In the **Select Country** list, select the desired country.

The current country is displayed under the function name in the settings screen.
The country selection is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Malfunction

This warning light, lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Audio Warning System fault: Repair needed"** if the audio warning system is in failure.

The system may be disturbed or unavailable. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light, lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

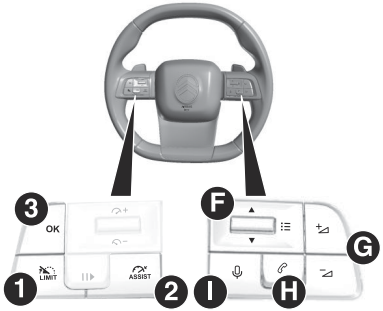
This warning light, lights up on the instrument panel with the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**" if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Speed setting recommendations
The driver can select the speed displayed by the **Road signs recognition** system as the speed setting for the speed limiter, cruise control or adaptive cruise control using the **OK** button.
In the event of rain detection, the system offers the driver a speed setting lower than the speed read/from the map in order to adapt to weather conditions (e.g.on motorways, the proposed speed is 68 mph (110 km/h) instead of 81 mph (130 km/h).

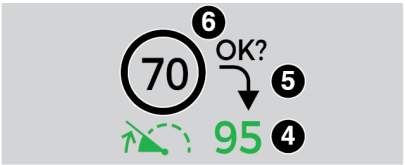
For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering-mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter mode
2. Select cruise control mode
3. Speed limit confirmation

Information displayed on the instrument panel



4. Current speed setting
5. Speed memorisation prompt
6. Current speed limit indication

Modifying the speed setting

► Switch on the speed limiter **1-LIMIT** or cruise control **2**.

Information related to the speed limiter or cruise control is displayed.
When a new speed setting is detected, the system displays the value and **"OK?"** flashes for a few seconds to suggest saving it as a new speed setting.

If there is a difference of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Road signs recognition, the "**OK?**" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

► Press **3-OK** to confirm the new speed setting.

The display then reverts to its previous state.

Extended Traffic Sign Recognition

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This additional system recognises these road signs and displays them on the instrument panel.
As you approach it, the symbol of the corresponding sign is displayed on the instrument panel.

The actual road signs always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen

The settings are changed via the ADAS touch screen application.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

According to country of sale

This system alerts the driver if one or more tires suffer a drop in pressure.
The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tire pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
It takes into account the last values stored during the reinitialisation request. It is therefore essential that the tire pressure is correct during the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

The tire under-inflation detection cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tire pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tires, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):
– worsens road-holding.
– lengthens braking distances.
– causes premature wear of the tires.
– increases energy consumption.

The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tire pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking tire pressures
This check should be done monthly when the tires are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Snow chains
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert



This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

► Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
► Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tire.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

► Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of all four tires when cold.
► If it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
► In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

Driving too slowly may not ensure optimum monitoring.
The alert is not immediately triggered in the event of a sudden loss of pressure or tire blow-out. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.
The alert may be delayed at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h), or when adopting a dynamic driving style.

The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tires, and after changing one or more wheels.

Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tires are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tire pressure label.
Check the pressures of the four tires before performing the reinitialisation.
The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen



With the vehicle stationary, the system can be reinitialised via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen



With the vehicle stationary, the system can be reinitialised in the **Settings>Vehicle** touch screen application.

► Then select **Safety > Tire Pressure Setup**.
► Press **YES** to confirm.
The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Malfunction



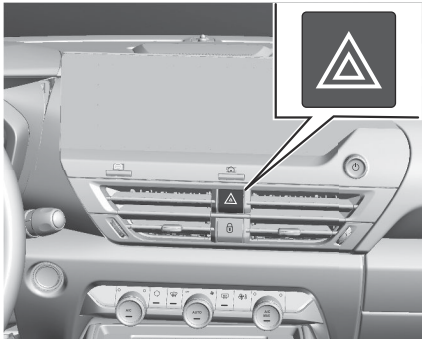
In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel.
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, the tire under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel

The use of this type of spare wheel may suspend tire pressure monitoring.
In this case, the malfunction warning lamp comes on and disappears once the wheel has been replaced by one of uniform size (the same as the others), the pressure readjusted and the reinitialisation carried out.

Hazard Warning Flashers



► Pressing this red button causes all the direction indicators to flash.
They can work with the ignition switched off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps
When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps .come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.
They can be turned off by pressing the button again.

Assist and SOS

Making Emergency Call



1. eCall (SOS)
2. ASSISTANCE

eCall (SOS)
Your vehicle may be fitted with the eCall (SOS) system either as standard or as an option.
The eCall (SOS) system provides direct contact to the emergency services and is fully built into the vehicle. This contact is made either automatically via the sensors built into the vehicle, or by pressing button **1.**
According to the country of sale, the eCall (SOS) system corresponds to the systems PE112, ERAGLONASS, 999, etc.
The eCall (SOS) system is activated by default.

► To make an emergency call manually, press button 1 for more than 2 seconds.

The lit indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services[2].
The eCall (SOS) system immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services[3].

► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

The indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle data is being sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

In the event that a serious accident is detected by the sensors built into the vehicle, such as the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically.

The eCall (SOS) system is a public service of general interest and is free-of-charge.

2 In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
3 Depending on the geographic coverage provided by the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Operation of the system
Vehicles equipped with Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system, Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen
– Upon switching on the ignition, the indicator lamp lights up red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
– The indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.
– The indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction. The emergency and assistance call services may not work.
– If the indicator lamp does not come on when the ignition is switched on, this also means that there is a system malfunction.
If the problem persists, contact a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

A system malfunction does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Vehicles equipped with 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen
– Upon switching on the ignition, the indicator lamp lights up for a few seconds and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
– The indicator lamp flashes red: emergency battery is flat. This will be recharged after a few minutes' driving.
– The indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction. The emergency and assistance call services may not work.
– If the indicator lamp does not light up when the ignition is turned on, this is also a system malfunction.
If the problem persists, contact a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

A system malfunction does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

When an onboard system update is being performed, the eCall (SOS) function is not available.

Data processing
All processing of personal data by the eCall (SOS) function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (General Data Protection Regulation - GDPR) or by UK GDPR (Data Protection, Privacy and Electronic Communications) Regulations 2019 and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6 (1) d) GDPR.
The processing of personal data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the eCall (SOS) function used with the "112" single European emergency call number.
The eCall (SOS) function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the "112" emergency number.

Data storage
Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.
The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Access to data
You have the right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or restriction of processing of any personal data not processed in accordance with the provisions of GDPR. Third parties to which data has been disclosed shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in compliance with the corresponding GDPR, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the respective data protection supervisory authority.
If you want to claim your above-mentioned rights please contact us per email at: privacyrights@stellantis.com.
For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on the brand's website.

ASSISTANCE

If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message[4]).
Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and CITROËN.
It can be configured in the **Settings** touch screen menu or application, depending on the audio equipment.
By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "ASSISTANCE" button to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, you are invited to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it as required. In a multilingual country, services can be configured to use the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of telematics services provided to customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematics system at any time.

Vehicles equipped with 3D Connected Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen
During an update to the vehicle's on-board telematics system, the ASSISTANCE system will be unavailable.

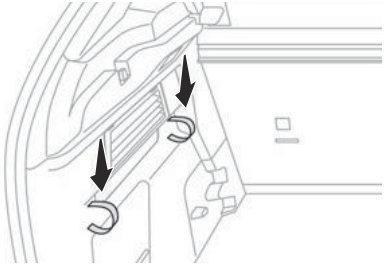
If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Warning Triangle

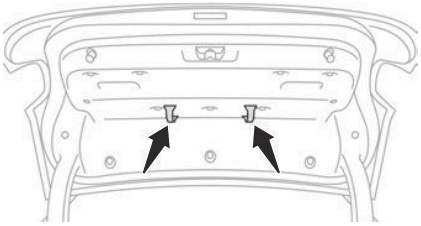
This reflective and dismantable device is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged.

Before getting out of the vehicle
Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.

Storage
C4

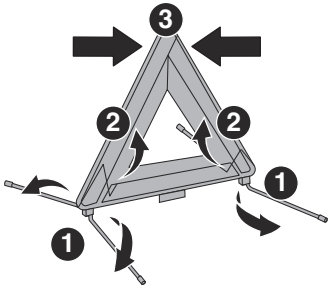


C4 X



▶ Use the straps on the boot side trim or on the tailgate to stow the folded triangle or its storage box.

[4] Depending on the geographic coverage of the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.
For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

► Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

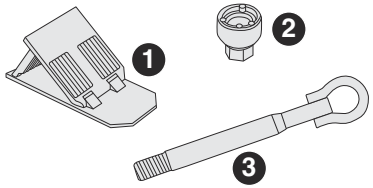
Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing

Wheel Changing Toolkit

Set of tools supplied with the vehicle.
Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:
– Temporary puncture repair kit.
– Spare wheel.

Access to the tools
Depending on version, the tool kit is stored in a bag or in a storage box in the boot.

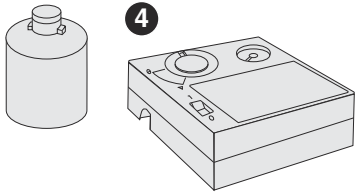
List of tools



1. Chock to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment)
2. Socket for the wheel security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment) To adapt the wheelbrace to the special 'security' bolts.
3. Removable towing eye

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

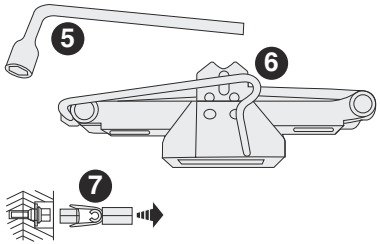
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. 12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker For temporary repair of a tire and to adjust the tire pressure.

For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace For removing the wheel bolts.

6. Jack with integrated handle
   To raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cap removal tool (depending on equipment)
   For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.
Do not use them for any other purpose.

The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

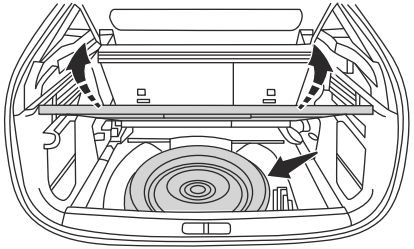
Spare wheel

Visit this link to view explanatory videos: http://q-r.to/bagGl9

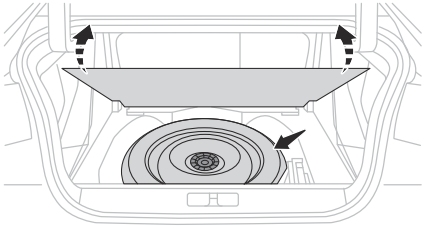
For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Accessing the spare wheel

C4



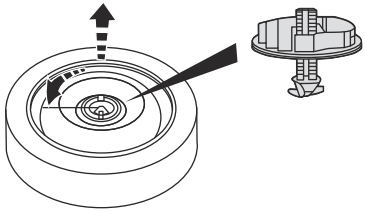
C4 X



The spare wheel is stored in the boot, under the floor.

Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard steel, non-standard or 'space-saver' wheel.

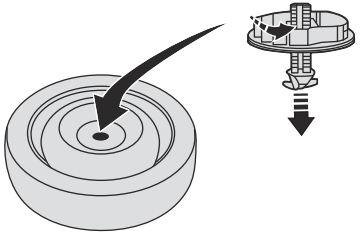
Removing the spare wheel



- Slacken the central nut.
- Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
- Lift the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the spare wheel back in place

The punctured wheel cannot be put under the boot floor.



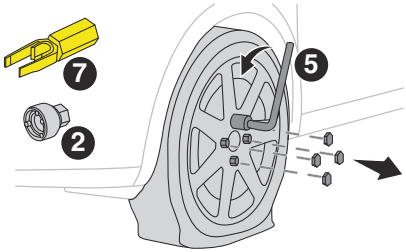
- Put the spare wheel back in place in its housing.
- Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.

- Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- Tighten the central nut sufficiently to retain the wheel correctly.
- Depending on version, put the tool box back in place in the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

Removing a wheel

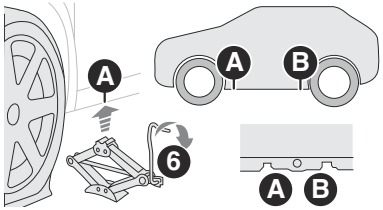
Parking the vehicle
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
Select mode **P** on the automatic gearbox to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.
Check that the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel are on fixed.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

Wheel with wheel trim
When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.
Wheel trims are identified by a "LEFT" mark on the left-hand side and a "RIGHT" mark on the right-hand side. Do not reverse these when removing/refitting the wheel.

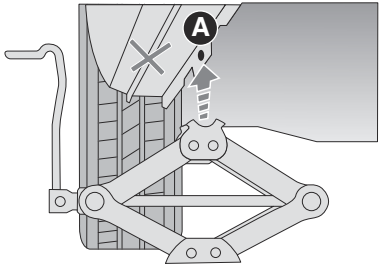


- To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool **7** (alloy wheels).
- Fit security socket **2** on wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

Never use an impact wrench on the security bolt socket.



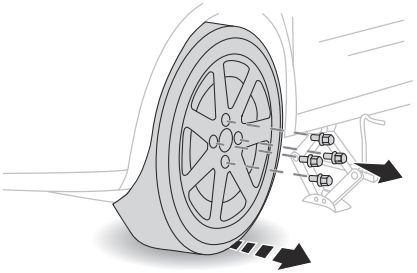
- Place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- Extend jack 6 until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.

- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily admit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

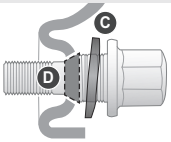
Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury! Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area on the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury!



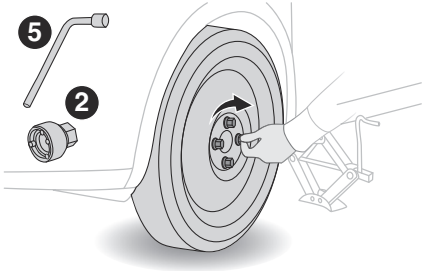
- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

Fitting a wheel

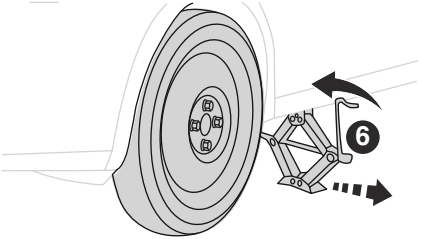
Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel



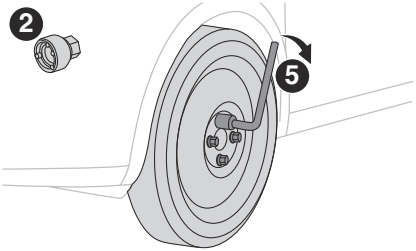
If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **C** do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **D** of each bolt.



- Fit the wheel on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.



- Lower the vehicle again fully.
- Fold jack **6** and remove it.



- Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
- Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- Store the tools.

With a non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel



Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.).
Do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 50 miles (80 km).
Driving with more than one spare wheel of this type is prohibited.
The wheel trim from the replaced wheel must not be refitted.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tyre pressure checked.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Tire Repair Kit

Visit this link to view explanatory videos: http://q-r.to/bagGl9

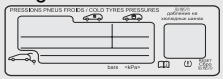
Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tire so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tire tread.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor to the 12 V power supply for long enough to repair a tyre after a puncture.

Only the 12 V socket located **at the front** of the vehicle can be used to power the compressor.

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.
For more information on **Identification markings**, particularly this label, refer to the corresponding section.

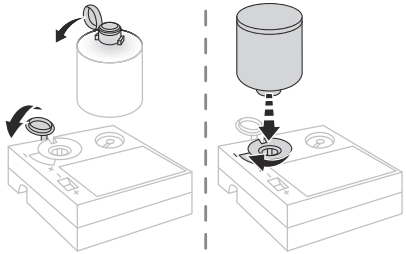


Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tire repair procedure

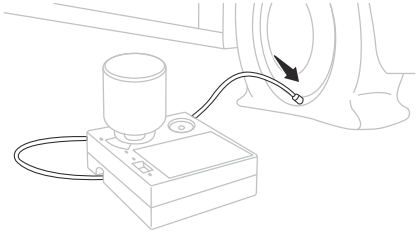
Do not remove any foreign body (e.g. nail, screw) which has penetrated the tyre.

- Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
- Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
- Switch the ignition off.



- Remove the transparent cap from the bottle of sealant.
- Lift the protective cover before installing the bottle of sealant on the compressor.

- Turn the bottle of sealant over and screw it a quarter turn into the compressor.
- Remove the valve cap from the Tire to be repaired, and place it in a clean place.



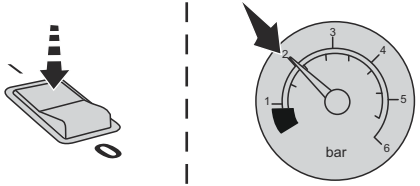
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the pipe from the compressor to the valve of the Tire to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".
- Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.



- Affix the speed limit sticker.

The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

- Switch the ignition on.

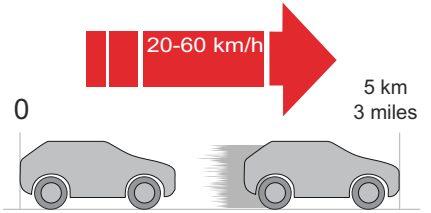


- Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position **"I"** until the Tire pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the Tire; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Move the switch to position **"O".**
- Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Remove the kit.
- Refit the cap on the valve.
- Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment; take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



- Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair **and the tire pressure** using the kit:

- If the tire pressure is incorrect, contact a CITROËN dealer to have the Tire changed.
- If the tire pressure is correct, drive a second time for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), stop then check again the tire pressure using the kit to confirm the effective repair of the tire.

With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km).
You must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and the tyre changed.

Checking/adjusting tire pressures
The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tire pressures.

- Remove the valve cap from the tire and keep it in a clean place.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is in position **"O".**
- Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Start the compressor by placing the switch at position **"I"** and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tire pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position **"O".**
- Remove the kit and stow it.
- Refit the cap on the valve.

Jump Starting

Lead-acid starter batteries

If the battery fails (after warranty coverage), replace it with a battery of the same specification as the one used in the vehicle.
All battery information can be found online at
https://public.servicebox-parts.com/ACddb/

These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead).
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Dispose of used batteries at a designated collection point.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Frozen battery
Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion! If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

Automatic gearbox
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Electric motor

Flat accessory battery
It is no longer possible to start the motor or recharge the traction battery.

Precautions before working on the accessory battery
Select mode **P**, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

Jump-starting another vehicle
Do not use the accessory battery to jump-start another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

Symbols



No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.


Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.

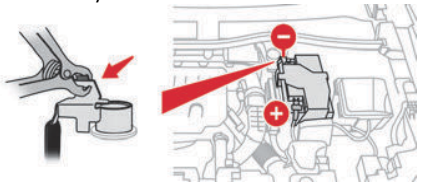

Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.


The vehicle's battery contains sulphuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.


For more information, refer to the handbook.


Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

Accessing the battery
The battery is located under the hood.



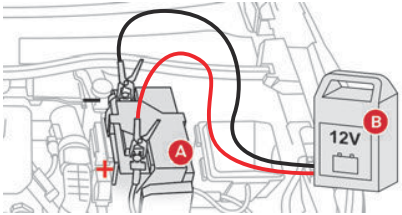
For access to the (+) terminal:

- Release the hood by pulling the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.
- Raise the hood.

(+) Positive terminal with a quick-release terminal.
(-) Negative terminal.

Starting using another battery
If the vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery B or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of flat battery **A**.
- Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- Wait for it to return to idle.
- Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order.**
- Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. Stop & Start).

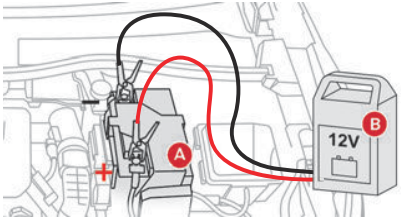
Charging the battery using a battery charger
For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:
– When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.
– If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).

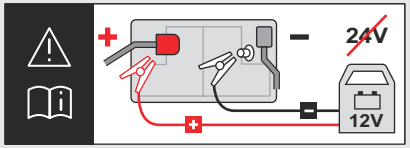


- Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- Connect the cables of charger B as follows:

• the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**.
• the negative (-) black cable to the (-) terminal of battery **A.**

- At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.

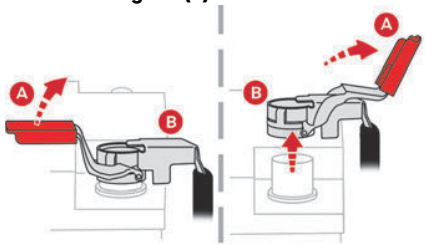


Disconnecting/reconnecting the battery
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, we recommend disconnecting the battery if the vehicle is to be unused for an extended period.
Before disconnecting the battery:

- Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
- Switch off all electricity-consuming devices (audio system, wipers, lamps, etc.).
- Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

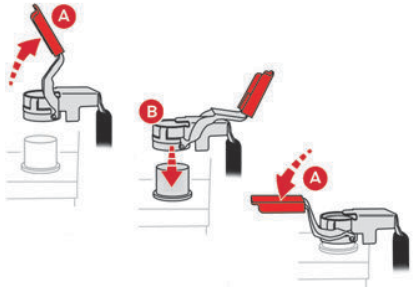
After accessing the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

Quick-release terminal clamp
Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.
- Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
- Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise lever A fully.
- Refit open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
- Push clamp **B** fully down.
- Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.
- Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.

Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

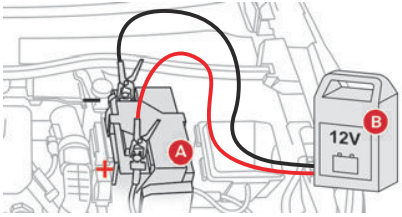
Following reconnection
After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:
– Remote control key or electronic key (depending on version).
– Sunroof.
– Electric windows.
– Date and time.
– Preset radio stations.

The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery

Starting using another battery
With petrol vehicles
If the vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery A (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery B or of the booster.
► Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery B or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
► Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of flat battery A.
► Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
► Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
► Wait for it to return to idle.
► Disconnect the jump leads in reverse order.
► Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. Stop & Start).

With electric vehicles

Starting the vehicle using another battery is prohibited.

12V Battery Charger

Charging the 12 V battery using a battery charger

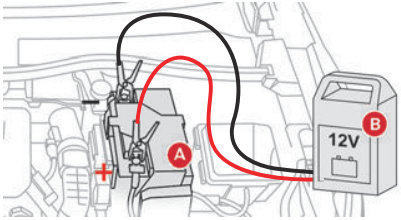
For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery (e.g. if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks) Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The hybrid system is connected to the 12 V network through the DC/DC converter. Any operation may affect the overall behaviour of the system.
To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- Switch off charger B before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Connect the cables of charger B as follows:
  • the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery A.
  • the negative (-) black cable to the (-) terminal of battery A.
- At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger B before disconnecting the cables from battery A.

Charging the 48 V battery using a 12 V battery charger

If the start fails, refer to the paragraph "Starting using another battery" and follow the recommended procedure.
In case of failure, especially after long storage, the 48 V battery may be discharged and require a charging process.

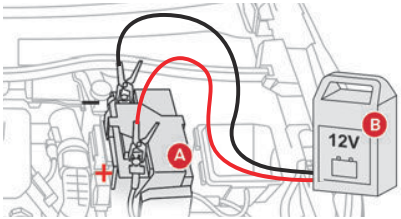
Do not try to charge the hybrid system directly.
The hybrid system is connected to the 12 V network through the DC/DC converter. Any operation may affect the overall behaviour of the system.

Only use a specific 12 V battery charger capable of maintaining 13.5 V with a high level of current 40-50 A (approx. 600 W).
To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- Switch off charger B before connecting the cables to the 12 V battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- Connect the cables of charger B as follows:
  • the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery A
  • the negative (-) black cable to earth point C on the vehicle
- Open the driver's door and turn the ignition on without pressing the brake pedal (to wake up the vehicle).

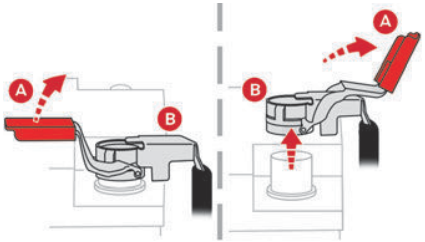
The hybrid system will automatically start charging the 48 V battery after 1 minute with a 12 V power supply higher than 13.5 V. The current supplied by the battery charger should be about 30-50A.
When the appropriate energy level is reached in the 48 V battery (between 30 to 40 minutes

depending on 12 V battery state of charge), the hybrid system automatically stops the charging process of the 48 V battery.

- ▶ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger B before disconnecting the cables from 12 V battery **A**.
- ▶ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- ▶ Operate the starter on the vehicle and let the engine run.
- ▶ Wait for it to return to idle.
- ▶ Allow the engine to run for at least 20 minutes, with the vehicle stationary (in a ventilated area to avoid accumulation of exhaust gases), so that the 48 V battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

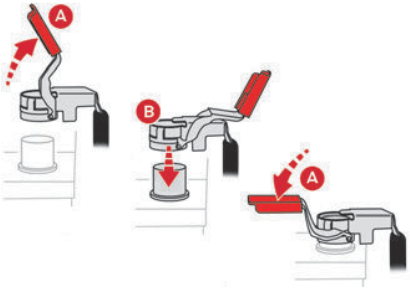
Quick-Release Battery Clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.
- ▶ Raise lever A fully to release clamp B.
- ▶ Remove clamp B by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Raise lever A fully.
- ▶ Refit open clamp B on the (+) terminal.
- ▶ Push clamp B fully down.
- ▶ Lower lever A to lock clamp B.
- ▶ Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.

Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

For hybrid versions

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or for charging a discharged battery (12 V or 48 V).

- ▶ Access to the 12 V battery.

For more information on Accessing the battery, refer to the corresponding section

- ▶ If necessary, perform the 12 V battery disconnection/reconnection procedure.

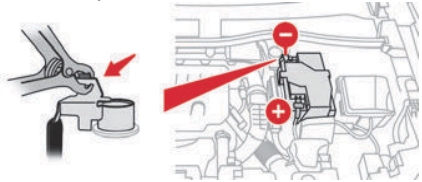
For more information on Disconnecting/ Reconnecting the battery, refer to the corresponding section.

- ▶ After reconnecting the 12 V battery, perform the automatic reset procedures of the electronic systems and manual reset of some equipment.

For more information on Following reconnection, refer to the corresponding section.

Accessing the battery

The battery is located under the hood.



For access to the (+) terminal:

- ▶ Release the hood by pulling the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.
- ▶ Raise the hood.

(+) Positive terminal with a quick-release terminal.
(-) Negative terminal.

After Being Recharged - Restarted

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment: – Remote control key or electronic key (depending on version).

- Sunroof.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.

Towing the Car - Towing a Disabled Vehicle

General recommendations
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

A professional recovery service must be called in the following cases:
– broken down on a motorway or main road;
– not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake;
– not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running;
– towing with only two wheels on the ground;
– four-wheel drive vehicle;
– no approved towbar available.

Before towing the vehicle, it is essential to put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

Electric vehicles
An electric vehicle cannot under any circumstances be used to tow another vehicle.
However, it may be used, for example, to exit a rut.

Towing constraints

	Towing constraints			
Type of vehicle (engine/gearbox)	**Front wheels on the ground**	**Rear wheels on the ground**	**Flatbed**	**4 wheels on the ground with towbar**
Internal combustion/ Manual	☑	☑	☑	☑
Internal combustion/ Automatic	☒	☑	☑	☒
Electric	☒	☑	☑	☒

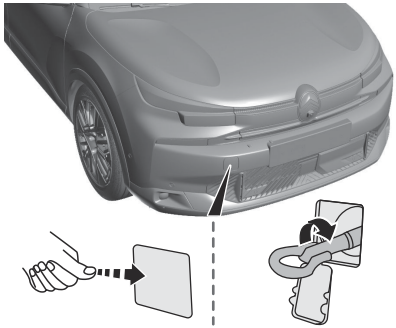
Accessing the tools

In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles.

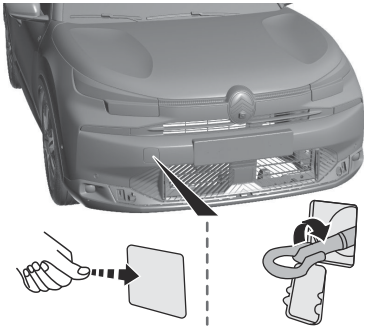
Accessing the tools
The towing eye is stored with the tool kit in the boot.
For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing your vehicle
To access the front screw thread:

C4-X



C4



- Unclip the cover by pressing on its left-hand section.
- Release the cover downwards.

To be towed:

- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towbar.
- Put the gearbox into neutral.

Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (e.g. braking, transmission) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

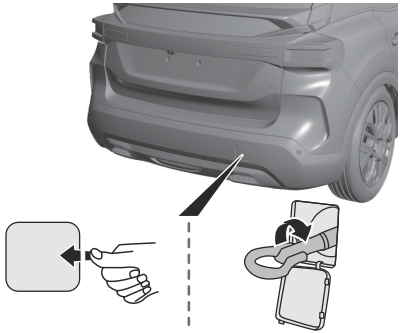
Automatic gearbox
Never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground and the engine off.

- Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

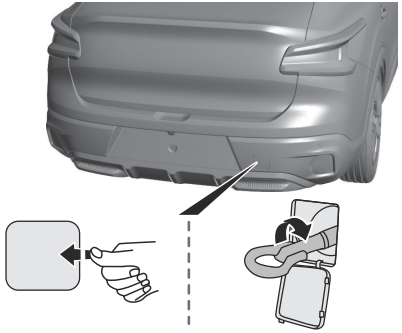
Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:

C4



C4-X



- ▶ Unclip the cover by pressing at its right-hand section.
- ▶ Pull the cover downwards.

To tow:

- ▶ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ▶ Install the towbar.
- ▶ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ▶ Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

General Information

Advice

General recommendations
Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Exterior

Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away.
When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).
Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console.
Be vigilant! To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

Bodywork
High-gloss paint

Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals
(Depending on version)

Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C).
Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Textile
The dashboard, door panels and seats may contain parts made of textile material.

Maintenance

Do not use aggressive cleaning products (e.g. alcohol, solvent or ammonia).
Do not use steam-cleaning systems - risk of affecting the adhesion of the fabrics!

Remove dust from the textile parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
Rub down the textile parts once per year with a clean, damp cloth. After leaving overnight to dry, brush with a soft-bristled brush.

Stain removal

Do not rub the stain or it may spread or you may cause the substance to penetrate the surface.

Act quickly by reducing the stain from its edges inwards.
Remove as much substance or solids as possible using a spoon or spatula, and remove as much liquid as possible using absorbent paper.

Product/Procedure to use depending on the type of stain:
– Grease, oil and ink: clean with a pH-neutral detergent.
– Vomit: clean with sparkling mineral water.
– Blood: spread flour over the stain and allow to dry; remove with a slightly damp cloth.
– Mud: allow to dry and then remove with a slightly damp cloth.
– Cake, chocolate, ice cream: clean with lukewarm water.
– Sugary and/or alcoholic drinks: clean with lukewarm water, or lemon juice if the stain is persistent.
– Hair gel, coffee, tomato sauce, vinegar: clean with lukewarm water and lemon juice.
For solid substances, then use a soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
For liquid substances, then use a damp microfibre cloth and then dry with another cloth.

Leather
Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability.
It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance.

Do not use maintenance products which are not suitable for cleaning leather (e.g. solvent, detergent, petrol, pure alcohol).
Do not use bleaching or colour-removal products (e.g. perchloroethylene).
When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.

Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus.
Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out.
Clean the leather, without rubbing too vigorously, using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product.
Dry with a soft, dry cloth.

End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal

Disposal of the traction battery

The traction battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations of the Manufacturer are followed.If it becomes necessary to replace the battery, contact the Manufacturer dealer for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.In accordance with regulations, the Manufacturer ensures a second life or recycling of this component in collaboration with qualified operators.

Scheduled Servicing

Periodic Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specifications. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

Air filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Drive selector



The drive selector does not require any maintenance.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing.

However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to

have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc/drum wear



For any information on checking brake disc/drum wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Wheels and tires



The inflation pressure of all tires, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tires.

The pressures indicated on the tire pressure label are valid for "cold" tires. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tires reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. Regularly check the condition of the tires (tread and sidewalls) and rims as well as the presence of the valve caps.
When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; replace the tires as soon as possible.
Using different size wheels and tires from those specified can affect the lifetime of tires, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tires on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.
Always mark the direction of rotation on the tires that will be stored when fitting winter or summer tires. Store them in a cool, dry place and away from direct exposure to the sun's rays.



Winter or 4-seasons tires can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

Shock absorbers



It is not easy for drivers to detect when shock absorbers are worn. Nevertheless, the shock absorbers have a major impact on road holding and braking performance.

For your safety and driving comfort, it is important to have them regularly checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Timing and accessory kits



The timing and accessory kits are used from the time the engine is started until it is switched off. It is normal for them to wear over time.

A faulty timing or accessory kit can damage the engine, rendering it unusable. Observe the recommended replacement frequency, stated in distance travelled or time elapsed, whichever is reached first.

Cheking Fluids Level : engine oil / brake fluid / engine coolant / screewash fluid

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The fluids must comply with the Manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil



The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.

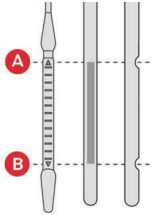
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick
For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

► Grasp the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.

▶ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



▶ Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A (max)** and **B (min).**

Do not start the engine if the level is:
– above mark **A**: contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
– below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

Oil grade
Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop). Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level
For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

▶ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).

▶ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.

▶ Top up the level if necessary.

▶ After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and replace the dipstick in its tube.

The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for 30 minutes following an addition of oil.

Brake fluid

The level of this fluid should be close to the **"MAX"** mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

Clean the cap before removing it to refill.Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant
(Petrol)
It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.
The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the **"MAX"** mark without ever going above it.
If the level is close to or below the **"MIN"** mark, it is essential to top it up.
When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.
As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.
(Electric)

For electric versions
Do not top up the coolant.



If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Screenwash fluid

Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification
The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

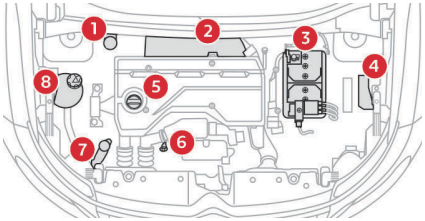
Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).

Engine Compartment

The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.
The locations of the following components may vary:

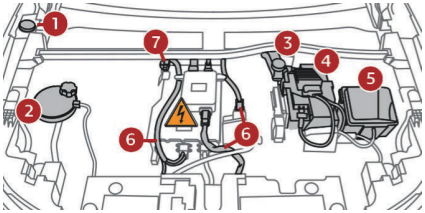
- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.

Petrol



1. Brake fluid reservoir
2. Air filter
3. Battery
4. Fusebox
5. Engine oil filler cap
6. Engine oil dipstick
7. Screenwash fluid reservoir
8. Engine coolant reservoir

Electric



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Fusebox
6. 400 V electrical circuit
7. Emergency circuit-breaker for emergency services and maintenance technicians

For more information on the Charging system (Electric), refer to the corresponding section.

Fuses

Changing a fuse
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

Installing electrical accessories
The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its recommendations, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Light Replacement

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!



The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
– **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.**
– Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
– When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlamps, lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp / lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns! Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers; use a lint-free cloth.
It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification. To avoid lighting imbalance, replace the bulbs in pairs.

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)
Do not touch the LED lamps - risk of electrocution!
If you need to replace this type of light, you must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

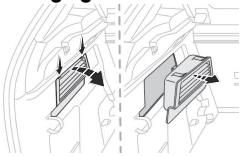
Refitting the lamp units
Perform the operations in the reverse order to dismantling.

Light-emitting diode (LED) headlamps and lamps
Depending on version, the affected types of headlamps/lamps are:
– LED technology headlamps.
– Front foglights.
– Daytime running lamps/sidelamps.
– Direction indicator side repeaters.
– Side spotlamps.
– Brake lamps.
– Third brake lamp.
– Rear sidelamps.
– Rear direction indicators
– Number plate lamps.

If you need to replace this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. Do not touch the Full LED technology headlamps or lamps - risk of electrocution!

Lights replacement

Changing bulbs C4



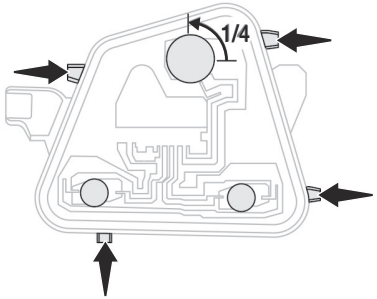
The bulbs are changed from inside the boot.
► Remove the access flap on the corresponding side trim:

• Press each of the notches in the upper part of the flap to unclip it.

• Tilt the flap and its support then extract the assembly.

► Disconnect the light unit connector.

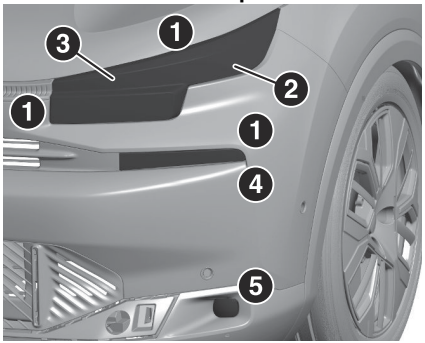
► Unlock the nut using a 10 mm pipe wrench then unscrew and remove it. Be careful not to drop it.
► Dismantle the light unit and carefully extract it, pulling it straight towards the outside.



► Unclip the bulb holder and remove it. Be careful not to disconnect the wiring harness.
► For the brake light, turn the bulb a quarter turn and replace it.
► For the reversing light and direction indicator, pull the bulb out and replace it.

Front Lights

Model with LED headlamps

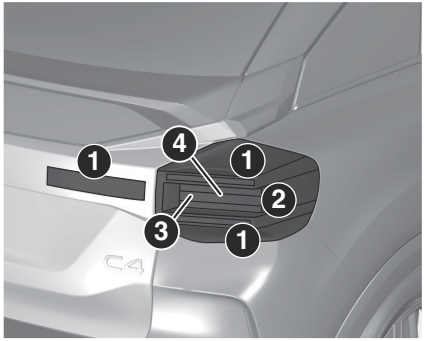


1. Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps
2. Dipped beam headlamps
3. Main beam headlamps
4. Direction indicators
5. foglights (P21W or LED)

Rear Lights

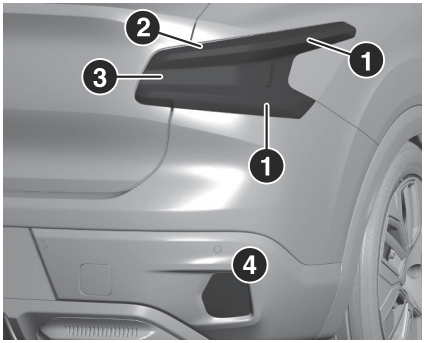
Rear lamps

C4



1. Sidelamps (LED)
2. Brake lamps (P21W)
3. Reversing lamps (W16W)
4. Direction indicators (WY16W)

C4 X

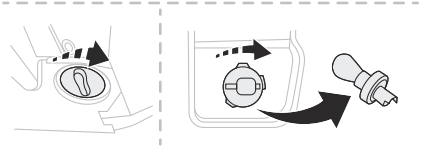


1. Sidelamps (LED)
2. Brake lamps (LED)
3. Direction indicators (LED)
4. foglight (P21W) or Reversing lamp (W16W)

Reversing light/foglight

C4 X





Theses bulbs are replaced from outside the rear bumper.
Theses bulbs are replaced from outside the rear bumper.

- ▶ Pass your hand under the bumper.
- ▶ Depending on version, remove the cover by turning it a quarter turn to the left.
- ▶ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn to the right and pull it out.
- ▶ Turn the bulb a quarter turn to the left and pull it out.
- ▶ Replace the bulb.

Refitting the lamp units
Perform the operations in the reverse order to dismantling.

When changing the bulb within a few minutes of switching off the ignition, take care not to touch the exhaust - risk of burns!

Tires and wheels

Tire Safety Information

This system alerts the driver when one or more tires have a drop in pressure.
The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.

Under-inflation alert

Fixed lighting of this warning light, accompanied by an audio signal; display of a message.

► Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
► Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
► Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check and adjust the pressures of all four tires when cold.
► If it is not possible to do this check, drive carefully at reduced speed.
► In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the light (depending on equipment).

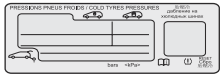
Reinitialisation

With the vehicle stationary, the system can be reinitialised via the Driving touch screen menu.

With the vehicle stationary, the system can be reinitialised in the **Settings>Vehicle** touch screen application.

► Then select **Safety > Tire Pressure Setup.**
► Press **YES** to confirm.
The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audiO signal.

Tire Pressure



The tire pressure label indicates the unladen and laden tire inflation pressures. This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Tire Chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels.
They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Use only chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to the vehicle:

Original tire size	Chain type
215/65 R16	Polaire XP9 120 (9 mm)
215/60 R17	Polaire XP9 120 (9 mm)
195/60 R18	Polaire PSS 112 (10 mm)

For more information on snow chains, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

- ▶ To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.
- ▶ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
- ▶ Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ▶ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ▶ Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

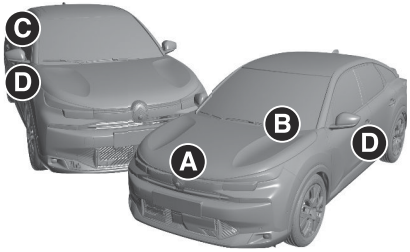
It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identfication Number (VIN)

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the hood.
Stamped on the chassis.
B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.
Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windscreen.
C. Manufacturer's label.
Affixed to the right-hand door.
Bears the following information:
– Manufacturer's name.
– European whole vehicle type approval number.
– Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
– Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
– Gross train weight (GTW).
– Maximum weight on the front axle.
– Maximum weight on the rear axle.

Tire Information Label

D. Tires/paint code label.
Affixed to the driver's door.
Bears the following information about the tires:
– Tire pressures, unladen and laden.
– Tire specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
– Spare tire inflation pressure.
Also indicates the paint color code.

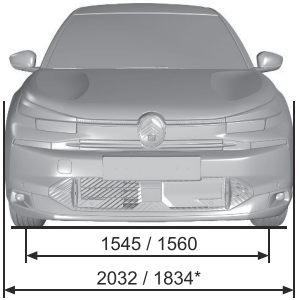
The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres).
In the event of a change in the type of tyres, contact a CITROËN dealer for the tyre fits approved for the vehicle.

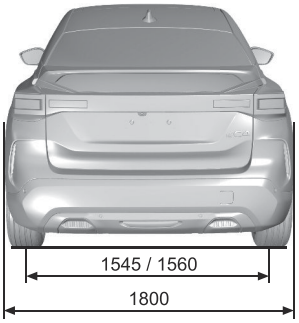
Vehicle Data

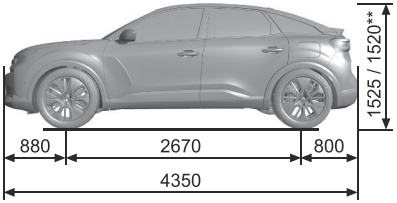
Dimensions

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

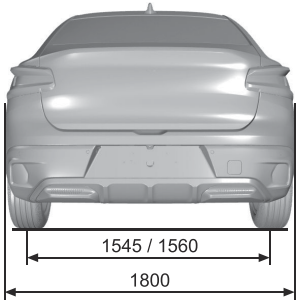
C4



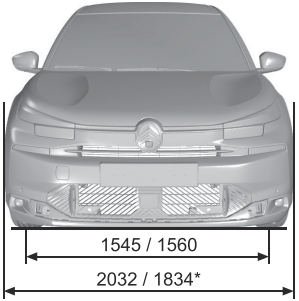


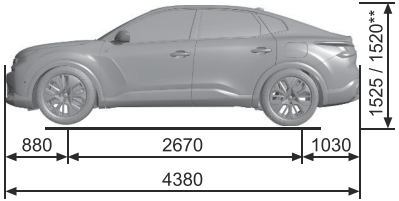


* Mirrors folded
** Electric versions



C4 X





* Mirrors folded
** Electric versions

Engine Data

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

TOWING DATA

Petrol

Engines	**PureTech 130 S&S**	
Gearboxes	**Turbo 130 S&S**	
Codes	**EB2ADTS ATN8 Euro 6.4**	
Model codes C4: 1CLE... C4 X: 1CLP...	AHNSB	DHNSB
Body styles	**C4**	**C4 X**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1199	1199
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96	96
Fuel	Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	670	680
Unbraked trailer (kg)	1000	1200
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	61	61

Engines	**Turbo 130**	
Gearboxes	**EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)**	
Codes	EB2ADTSM ATN8 Euro 6.1	
Model codes C4: 1CLE... C4 X: 1CLP...	BAHNLD	BDHNLD
Body styles	C4	C4 X
Cubic capacity (cc)	1199	1199
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96	96
Fuel	Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600	500
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	500
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	61	61

Electric motor

Model codes: C4: 1CLE... C4 X: 1CLP...	CZKXC FZKXC	CZKXCRG1 FZKXCRG1
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	0	0
Unbraked trailer (kg)	0	0
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	0	0
Electric motor		
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets	MEL ZAE 100 ou MAE ZLE 100
Max. power : EC standard (kW)/(hp)	100/136	115/136
Traction battery		
Technology	Lithium-Ion	Lithium-Ion
Installed capacity (kWh)	50	54
Domestic charging	**Mode 2**	**Mode 2**
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase) 8 or 16	230 (single-phase) 8 or 16
Accelerated charging	**Mode 3**	**Mode 3**
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32
Superfast charging	**Mode 4**	**Mode 4**
Direct current (DC) voltage	400	BËV 350 BËV 420

Hybrid

Engines	Hybrid 100 ë-DCT6	Hybrid 136 ë-DCT6
Codes	**EB2LTDH2 EDCT Euro 6.4**	**EB2LTDH2 EDCT Euro 6.4**
Model codes C4: 1CLE... C4 X: 1CLP...	BAHPXA6	BAHPYA6 BDHPYA6
Body styles	C4	C4 / C4-X
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1000	1000/1200
Unbraked trailer (kg)	700	700
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	61	61
Petrol engine	Turbo 100	Turbo 136
Gearbox	Electric dual clutch automatic 6-speed	Electric dual clutch automatic 6-speed
Cubic capacity (cc)	1199	1199
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	74	100
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded
Electric motor		
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power : EC standard (kW)	21	21
Traction battery		
Technology	Lithium-Ion	Lithium-Ion

Wheels and tires

Tire Pressure

This system alerts the driver if one or more tires suffer a drop in pressure.
The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tire pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.**
It takes into account the last values stored during the reinitialisation request. It is therefore essential that the tire pressure is correct during the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

The tyre under-inflation detection cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):
– worsens road-holding.
– lengthens braking distances.
– causes premature wear of the tyres.
– increases energy consumption.

The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tire pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking tyre pressures
This check should be done monthly when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Snow chains
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

For more information on Tires and wheels, refer to the corresponding sections.

Introduction

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. These control units process data received from the vehicle's sensors, for example, or data they generate themselves or exchange with each other. Some of these control units are required for the correct operation of your vehicle, some others assist you while driving (driving or manoeuvring aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
The following contains general information about how data is processed within the vehicle. You will find additional information about the specific data which is downloaded, stored and transmitted to third parties and what it is used for in your vehicle under the keyword "Data protection". This information is directly associated with the references for the functions in question contained in the corresponding vehicle handbook. These are also available in the general terms of sale of the vehicle, in the general terms of sale of connected services, or online on brand website.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is identified by means of a unique chassis number. Further options, such as thevehicle's number plate, make it possible to trace data on the keeper or driver of the vehicle.
The data generated or processed by control units may therefore be personal, or be made personal under certain conditions. Depending on what vehicle data is available, conclusions may be drawn on information such as your driving behavior, your location or the route you travel, or on your usage behavior.

Operating data in the vehicle

The control units process the data used for the operation of the vehicle.
This data includes, for example:

- Information about the state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, travel time, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, fastened seat belts display).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a general rule, this data is temporary, is not stored for longer than one operating cycle and is only used within the vehicle itself. The control units often record this data (including the vehicle's key). This function allows either the temporary or permanent storage of information about the state of the vehicle, stresses on components, servicing requirements, as well as events and technical errors.

Technical data of the vehicle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the data stored is as follows:

- Operating state of system components (e.g. filling level, tire pressures, battery charge status).
- Faults and malfunctions in important system components (e.g. lamps, brakes).
- System reactions in specific driving situations (e.g. deployment of an airbag, triggering of stability control and braking systems).
- Information about events which have damaged the vehicle.
- For electric and rechargeable hybrid vehicles, the traction battery charge level and the estimated driving range.

- Exact mileage or timestamp of recorded events (detection of internal malfunctions, activation of specific systems, etc.), allowing to locate them in time.
- Dynamic data recorded few seconds before and after specific driving events, such as accidents, collisions or activations of Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS): driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, engine speed, selected ratio on the gearbox, pedals pressure), and potential very low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle (only if ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system is activated).
In particular circumstances (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to record data which would otherwise simply not be stored.

Maintenance and repair activities

When taking your vehicle in for servicing (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the stored operating data may be read along with the vehicle's identification number and used if necessary. The personnel working for the servicing network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. roadside assistance agents) may read the vehicle's data. This also applies to work carried out under warranty and quality assurance measures.

This data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port fitted by law to the vehicle. It is used to report on the technical state of the vehicle or its components and facilitates the diagnosis of malfunctions, in compliance with warranty obligations and for quality improvement. This data, in particular the information relating to stress on components, technical events, operator errors and other malfunctions, is sent to the Manufacturer, if necessary, along with the vehicle's identification number. The Manufacturer's liability may also be engaged. The Manufacturer may also use the operating data taken from the vehicle for product recalls. This data may also be used to check the customer's warranty and any claims made under warranty.
Any malfunctions stored in the vehicle may be reset by an after-sales service company during servicing or repair work, or at your request.

ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system

Depending on its level of equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with an ADAS Data Recorder system that continuously process pictures and driving data, and record them inside your vehicle when specific Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS) are triggered (e.g. Intelligent emergency braking assistance, interruption of a Semi-automatic lane changing, where applicable). This system aims to provide pieces of understanding for ADAS behaviour, by collecting data every time ADAS are triggered. Concerned data is greyed low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle and dynamic driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, brake pressure pedal, blinker status, accelerator pedal position), both sampled every seconds just before and just after the event. Exact mileage and timestamping of the event are also recorded. Resolution of stored pictures is too low to allow recognition of faces, to read license plates, or to interpret panels on the roadside.
All this stored information can only be extracted from your vehicle near a PEUGEOT-approved repairer workshop, via a special equipment connected by wire to the OBD port. This can be done upon a request on your side for ADAS explanation, or in the context of a legal investigation concerning your vehicle. This system only aims to provide explanatory context of ADAS activations. Only activation of specific ADAS systems can trigger it ; this system is never directly triggered by detection of accidents or collisions without ADAS activation. In case where ADAS are deactivated, ADR system will not record any data.

Event Data Recorder (EDR) system

In addition, depending on country of sale and upon legal obligations, your vehicle may also be equipped with an Event Data Recorder system that records data in case of accident or collision, whatever the activation status of your ADAS systems. Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2022/545, EDR system is a legal obligation inside Europe Market, and in other countries bent to UN Regulation No 160 ; its purpose is to freeze driving data when accidents or collisions occur.
Contrary to the ADR system above described, pictures of the scene are never recorded by EDR system. Data can only be read through OBD port via a special equipment that law enforcement agencies may use to analyse the context of an accident involving your vehicle. Except in exceptional cases, repairers do not own this equipment.
For more information on the **Event Data Recording system**, please refer to the "**Safety**" section of this document

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and personalised settings may be saved in the vehicle and modified or reinitialised at any time.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Seat and steering wheel position settings.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.
- Personalised settings such as the interior lighting.

You can enter your own data into the functions of your vehicle's audio and telematic system, as part of the selected functionalities.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Multimedia data such as music, videos or photos to be read by an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data to be used with an integrated hands-free system or with an integrated navigation system.
- Entered destinations.
- Data regarding the use of online services.

This data for the comfort and infotainment functions may be stored locally in the vehicle or saved to a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). Data that you have entered yourself may be deleted at any time.
This data may also be transmitted outside the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in line with the settings that you have selected.

Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple® CarPlay®)

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle in order to operate it using the vehicle's integrated controls. Images and sounds from the smartphone can be transmitted through the audio and telematics system. Specific information is simultaneously sent to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as location, day/night mode and other general information about the vehicle. For more information, please refer to the user instructions for the vehicle or the audio and telematics system.
Integrating a smartphone allows you to use its applications, such as a navigation app or music player. No other integration between the smartphone and the vehicle is possible, in particular active access to vehicle data.
How the data is processed subsequently is determined by the supplier of the application being used. The ability the change settings depends on the application in question and on the operating system installed on your smartphone.

Online services - "Over The Air" connectivity

If your vehicle is connected to a wireless network, data can be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems.
Connection to a wireless network is made possible via a transmitter located in your vehicle or a mobile device that you have provided (e.g. smartphone). The online services can be used via this wireless connection. These include online services and applications (apps) provided to you by the Manufacturer or other suppliers.

Proprietary services

As regards the Manufacturer's online services, the corresponding functions are described by the Manufacturer in an appropriate medium (e.g. handbook, Manufacturer's website) and the information about data protection is provided.
Personal data may be used for online services. The exchange of data for this purpose takes place over a secure connection, using for example the Manufacturer's dedicated computer systems. The collection, processing and use of personal data for the development of services are carried out solely on the basis of a legal authorisation, for example in the case of a legal emergency call system or a contractual agreement or else under a consent agreement. You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (some may be chargeable) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire connection to the wireless network. This does not include legally required functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Third-party services

If you use online services provided by other (third-party) suppliers, these services are subject to the responsibility, the data protection and the terms and conditions of use of the supplier in question. The Manufacturer often has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.
Please therefore ensure that you are aware of the nature, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data as part of the third-party services provided by the service provider in question.

Online services based on contractual agreements

Your vehicle may disclose and receive data by “over the air“ connectivity to perform services explicitly requested by a service subscriber. During the subscription process, we check by different means the legitimacy of the requestor considered as vehicle’s owner to activate se rvices on the vehicle.
For more details on those services, please ask the service subscriber to provide the relative Terms and Conditions accepted. You can find them from the Brand Mobile app or the Brand website, after being connected with a Stellantis account.

Protecting measures against cyber attacks

Depending to the model, your vehicle may be equipped with a system that detects cyber attack attempts or unexpected events for cybersecurity point of view . This system, when

fitted inside the vehicle, is working for the entire life cycle of the vehicle.
When cybersecurity events are detected (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abn ormal system configurations), log files are generated, temporally stored inside your vehicle and then sent to the Manufacturer's in fra structures by "over the air" connectivity. Those log files are analysed by the Manufacturer's Security Operational Center (SOC) to define appropriate measures protecting vehicles from malicious interactions with electronical components. Such measures could be the deployment of software and firmware updates.
The purpose of this system is thus to enhance cybersecurity measures settled inside vehicles. It also directly participates to the securitization of your vehicle's connectivity and allows the correct performance of online services activated on your vehicle . Ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing are described within the European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis (see below).

Applying legal Obligations and respective requirements

This list can change according to European regulations. Please consult online this document to be sure to have the up-to-date list of applying regulations in EU. Depending of the date of the Type Approval of the vehicle, some regulations cannot apply.
Generally, these legal obligations can disclose data independtly of the in-vehicle privacy settings.

eCall - Emergency Call

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE.
This function, where operational, is provided through the Public Emergency service of each country where you are driving. It doesn't matter where you bought your vehicle or where it is registered.
In the event of a significant impact or a serious accident recorded by the DEVICE on the VEHICLE, with consequent shutdown of the VEHICLE itself, a phone-call is automatically forwarded from the VEHICLE to the respective Public Emergency number (call to '112' inside Europe), together with the transmission of the minimum data needed for identification and location of the VEHICLE (i.e. your exact location, the time of the accident, your vehicle's identification number and direction of travel). This information is only transmitted from your vehicle in the event of a serious accident ; it allows the Public Emergency Services to assess and manage your situation. The Public Emergency Services will act according to local legislation and its own operating procedures. Inside Europe, the 112- based eCall service is a public service of general interest and should therefore be accessible free of charge to all consumers.
According to Regulation (EU) 2015/758, this system is mandatory for all new types of vehicle approved for manufacture after 31 March 2018. The eCall system is only activated if your vehicle is involved in a serious accident. The rest of the time the system remains inactive. This means that when you are simply driving your vehicle, no permanent tracking (registering your car's position or monitoring your driving) or transmission of data takes place on behalf of this regulatory service.

OBFCM - On-Board Fuel Consumption Meter

This SERVICE is provided for 15 years after the vehicule is fisrtly put into circulation.
In accordance to Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 ("OBFCM"), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance travelled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable). These data are used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO2 emission of the new vehicles, in an anonymized and aggregated way.
As mentioned in OBFCM regulation, the CUSTOMER can refuse the collection and transmission of vehicle's data for regulatory OBFCM purpose. This can be done by contacting Customer Care Center (contact information available on the brand website available for your country).

SLI - Speed Limit Information

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE, only for vehicles sold inside the Europe Market.
Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2018/858 on the approval and market surveillance of motor vehicles and their trailers, and of systems, components and separate technical units intended for such vehicles dated 30 May 2018, as amended by the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144 dated 27 November 2019 and the Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2021/1958 dated 23 June 2021 (together the "GSR V2 Regulations"), car manufacturers are required to equip new vehicles sold in Europe with various systems aiming at guaranteeing the overall safety of such vehicles.

As per Article 6 of the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144, such systems must include an "intelligent speed assistance" system (hereinafter "ISA") that provides the applicable speed limit to the driver for at least 90% of the total distance and for at least 80% of the distance driven on each of the three road types (urban roads and streets, non-urban roads, and motorways/expressways/dual carriageways).
SLI function provides the driver with the applicable speed limit on the road where driver travels. SLI function aims to improve the safety by allowing the vehicle to display in real time applicable speed limit, even when external conditions doesn't not permit it (e.g. weather, sign hidden by another vehicle). The applicable speed limit is retrieved from the front camera of the vehicle and maybe completed through Over-The-Air communication system to improve the reliability of information according to the vehicle definition. To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing. Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time. This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the vehicle.
As required by the "GSR V2 Regulations", this SLI feature is activated by default at key on, but can be partially deactivated at every time by the user of the vehicle, given that the driver may cut the audible warning function from the vehicle's settings available from the central touch screen. This will not impact the visual warning function that will stay active and may still require Over-The-Air data transmission of current vehicle's position for accurate speed limit detection. Depending on the model of your vehicle, it may be possible to also fully cut the SLI function (i.e. to stop speed limit detection and speed limit warning function) from the central touch screen, and thus cut the data transmission for the current trip.

Mileage disclosure to Car-Pass association
(Only for vehicles registered in Belgium)
This disclosure is active in Belgium only, as an answer to a Belgium law in order to prevent vehicle mileage fraud (Belgium law of 28th november 2018, applicable from 01/01/2020).
It is provided lifetime, as long as Car-Pass association requests the data.
It consists in providing 4 times a year the mileage of any vehicle registered in Belgium to Car-Pass, an association delegated by belgian authorities to collect and control this data.
This mileage is collected over-the-air by Stellantis if another connected service already uses it. This data is transmitted to Car-Pass association, upon request of this organism.
For more information, please refer to the Car-Pass privacy policy (https://www.car-pass.be/en/privacy-policy).

Data Use - Product Quality Improvement

You acknowledge and agree that to improve the quality of the products produced by STELLANTIS AUTO SAS as a car maker, your Vehicle Data (as defined in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services, see below) – excluding the geolocation of the vehicle – are transferred to the car maker for the purpose of anomalies avoidance, aggregated data analysis for product improvement or creation of new products. Further information on this, and ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing, are described in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services (see below).

European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis

This Privacy Policy for Connected Vehicles ("Privacy Policy") applies to the Personal Data we process about users of the connected services through our Vehicle, our Websites or Application who have signed the General Conditions as a Customer or who are authorized by a Customer to access and use the connected services.
This Privacy Policy is drafted pursuant Article 13 of the EU Regulation 679/2016 and will help you understand better how we handle your information.
In this document, you will find some examples of how we process Personal Data, and Definitions referring to more detailed explanations (at the end this Privacy Policy). If you would like any clarifications regarding this Privacy Policy or how your data are processed, please send your request to: dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com This document is available on brand websites, in the section dedicated to connected services.

CONTENTS

A

ABS 145
Active Safety Brake 140
Adjusting seat 43
Adjusting the air distribution 70, 72
Adjusting the air flow 68, 70
Adjusting the seat angle 25
Adjusting the temperature 67
Adjusting the time 106
Air conditioning 18, 19, 67–69, 71, 73
Air conditioning, automatic 73
Air intake 19, 70, 71
Air vents 4, 67, 70, 72
Airbags 28, 144
Airbags, curtain 30
Airbags, front 30
Airbags, lateral 30
Alarm 15
Antitheft / Immobiliser 15
Applications 76
Assistance call 98, 178
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 104

B

Battery, 12 V 186
Blanking screen (snow shield) 19
Blind Spots Monitoring (BSM) 145
Bluetooth (hands-free) 100
Bluetooth (phone) 100
Brakes 143
Braking 118
Braking, automatic emergency 140

C

Central locking 15
Changing a wiper blade 41
CHECK 197
Checking the levels
Levels and checks 200
Checks 197
Checks, routine 198
Child 31
Child lock 6
Child seats 31, 32
Deactivating the passenger airbag 31
Child seats, conventional 34, 36
Child seats, i-Size 36
Child seats, ISOFIX 36
Children 31
Cleaning 41
Closing the boot 15
Closing the doors 15
Collision Risk Alert 140
Connection, Bluetooth 100
Connectivity 99, 100
Consumptions 57
Control stalk, ipers 40
Control, emergency door 11
Courtesy lamps 48

D

Date (setting) 106
Deactivating the passenger airbag 33
Defrosting, rear 18
Demisting 18, 22, 69
Demisting, rear 22
Diagnosis 214
Diagnosis, vehicle 65
Dimensions 207
Drive selector (Electric) 117
Driving positions (storing) 43
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 143, 144

E

ECO mode 67
Eco-driving 3
Electronic brakeforcedistribiuton (EBFD) .145
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 144
Emergency call 177
Emergency switching off 110
Energy economy mode 92
Energy recovery 118
Engines 208
Environment 213
ESC (electronic stability control) 144
Expanded traffic sign recognition 169
Exterior lighting 43

F

Favourite driving functions 139
Fittings, front 51
Fittings, rear 52
Fluid, brake 200
Frequency (radio) 104

G

Gearbox, automatic 117

Glove box 51

H

Hazard warning flashers 177
Headlights, automatic dipping 45
Headlights, automatic operation 45
Headlights, main beam 46
Heated steering wheel 71
Heating, programmable 68
Hill start assist 168
Horn 39

I

Inflating tires 206

K

Key 11, 15
Key not recognised 109
Key, electronic 15
Key, replacing battery 9
Keys 6
Kit, hands-free 100
Kit, temporary puncture repair 180

L

Lane Departure Warning 150
Lane keeping assist 147
Lane positioning assist 151
Leather (care) 197
Level, brake fluid 200
Level, screenwash fluid 200
Lighting, exterior 43
Lighting, guide-me home 47
Lighting, welcome 47
Locking, automatic 12

M

Maintenance, routine 198
Markings, identification 147, 206
Mat 53
Menu, shortcuts 139
Mirror, rear view 22
Mirrors, door 22

P

Pads, brake 200
Paint color code 206
Parking (sensors) 156, 157
Parking sensors, audible and visual 153
Parking sensors, front 157
Parking sensors, rear 156
Phone 105
Plates, identification 206
Port, USB 51
Post Collision Safety Brake 144
Pre-tensioning (seat belts) 27
Pressures, tires 206
Protecting children 31

R

Radio 103, 104
Reading lamps, ... 48
Rear bench seat 25
Recirculation, air 71
Recorder, trip distance 56, 57
Reinitialising the remote control 15
Reinitialising the under-inflation detection system 175
Remote control 11
Removing the mat 53
Resetting the trip 57
Reversing camera 158

S

Safety, children 31
Screenwash 200
Screenwash, front 200
Seat belts 28
Seat belts, rear 28
Seats 24
Selector, gear 117
Serial number, vehicle 206
Servicing 197
Shield, snow 19
Smartphone 101, 102, 104
Snow chains 204
Snow screen 19
Stability control (ESC) 144
Station, radio 103
Steering wheel 39
Steering wheel (adjustment) 39
Storing driving positions 43
Sunshine sensor 45
Surround Vision 153

T

Technical data 208
Time (setting) 106

Tire under-inflation detection 174
Tires 206
Tools 180
Top Tether (fixing) 36
Total distance recorder 56
Touch screen 74, 75
Towbar 194
Towed loads 208
Towing 194
Towing another vehicle 194
Towing the vehicle 194
Traction control (ASR) 143
Trailer 143
Trajectory control systems 143
Triangle, warning 179
Trip computer 57

U

Under-inflation (detection) 174
Unlocking 15
Unlocking the boot 15, 17
Unlocking the doors 15
Unlocking the tailgate 15
Updating the time 106

V

Vehicle data recording and privacy 213
Ventilation 71

W

Warning and indicator lights 58
Warning and indicators 58
Warning light , driver's seat belt not fastened 28
Warning light, seat belts 60
Warning lights 58, 177
Weights 208
Wheel, spare 180
Wiper blades (changing) 41
Wipers 40
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 40

Recycled materials/End-of-Life Vehicles
Automobiles CITROËN declares, in accordance with the provisions of European legislation (Directive 2000/53) and The End-of-Life Vehicles (Producer Responsibility) (Amendment) Regulation 2010 No.1094, that it achieves the objectives set by these legislations and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.
Reproducing and translating this document, even partially, is strictly prohibited without authorisation from
Automobiles CITROËN

Automobiles CITROËN,
société par actions simplifiée au capital social de 159.000.000 euros dont le siège social est situé 2-10 boulevard de l'Europe, 78300 POISSY, et immatriculée auprès du RCS de Versailles sous le numéro 642 050 199.
www.citroen.com

STAR7

Printed in the EU
11-24

CITROËN prefers TotalEnergies

CITROËN | TotalEnergies



FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE
WITH QUARTZ LUBRICANTS

* 1L & 5L produced in Europe

Partners for more than 50 years, Citroën & TotalEnergies share common values: technology, creativity, innovation. TotalEnergies equips Citroën vehicles with Quartz lubricants from their first filling in the factory through to the authorised servicing dealer network to guarantee them optimal performance on a daily basis. **Especially designed for Citroën vehicles**, Quartz lubricants make them even more powerful, more fuel efficient and more environmentally friendly. For the servicing of your Citroën, fill up with confidence with Quartz lubricants!

Keep your engine younger for longer!

Quartz Ineo Xtra First 0W-20 is a very highperformance lubricant resulting from the joint work of the Citroën and TotalEnergies R&D teams. Its innovative technology extends your engine's life while achieving significant fuel savings and thus limiting CO2 emissions. The product is now available in new packaging* made of 50% recycled material and which is 100% recyclable.

C00C4CO2411en-1